

OXFORD

A Student's Guide to

**INDONESIAN**

Grammar

Dwi Noverini Djennar

OXFORD

A Student's Guide to  
INDONESIAN  
Grammar

Dwi Noverini Djenar

# OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

253 Normanby Road, South Melbourne, Victoria 3205, Australia

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.

It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi

Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi

New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece

Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore

South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD is a trade mark of Oxford University Press

in the UK and in certain other countries

Copyright © Dwi Noverini Djenar 2003

First published 2003

Reprinted 2005

This book is copyright. Apart from any fair dealing for the purposes of private study, research, criticism or review as permitted under the Copyright Act, no part may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without prior written permission. Enquiries to be made to Oxford University Press.

## Copying for educational purposes

Where copies of part or the whole of the book are made under Part VB of the Copyright Act, the law requires that prescribed procedures be followed. For information, contact the Copyright Agency Limited.

National Library of Australia

Cataloguing-in-Publication data:

Djenar, Dwi Noverini, 1961-

A student's guide to Indonesian grammar.

Includes index.

For secondary students in years 10-12 and beginning tertiary students.

ISBN 019 551466 1.

1. Indonesian language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English I Title.  
499.22182421

Typeset by Sylvia Witte

Printed by Bookpac Production Services, Singapore

# Contents

<i>Introduction</i>	viii
<i>Acknowledgments</i>	ix
<i>Source Acknowledgments</i>	x
<b>1 Asking and Answering Questions</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Asking questions	1
1.2 Giving answers	6
<b>2 Noun Phrases</b>	<b>12</b>
2.1 Noun + possessor	12
2.2 Noun + another noun	14
2.3 Noun + adjective	16
2.4 Noun + verb	16
2.5 Noun + demonstrative	17
<b>3 Numbers, Classifiers and Quantity</b>	<b>20</b>
3.1 Numbers	20
3.2 Classifiers	24
3.3 Quantity	26
3.4 Group words	27
<b>4 Saying 'To Be' with <i>Adalah</i> and <i>Ialah</i></b>	<b>29</b>
4.1 The difference between <i>adalah</i> and <i>ialah</i>	29
4.2 The function of <i>adalah</i> and <i>ialah</i>	30
4.3 Optional <i>adalah</i> and <i>ialah</i>	30
4.4 <i>Merupakan</i>	31
<b>5 Prepositions</b>	<b>33</b>
5.1 Basic prepositions	33
5.2 Other prepositions	35
<b>6 Uses of <i>Ada</i></b>	<b>38</b>
6.1 There <i>is/are/was/were</i>	38
6.2 To be at a place	39
6.3 To have	39
<b>7 Comparing</b>	<b>41</b>
7.1 How to say 'more than' or 'less than'	41
7.2 How to say 'most'	44
7.3 Saying 'same as' or 'as ... as'	45



<b>8</b>	<b>Uses of Yang</b>	47
8.1	To refer to a person or thing	47
8.2	To say 'the person who(m) ...' or 'the thing that ...'	48
8.3	Asking 'which (one)?'	48
<b>9</b>	<b>Transitive and Intransitive Verbs</b>	50
9.1	Intransitive verbs	50
9.2	Transitive verbs	54
9.3	Deriving transitive from the intransitive	57
<b>10</b>	<b>Ber-</b>	61
10.1	To have what the base word indicates	61
10.2	To use or wear	62
10.3	To do what the base word indicates	63
10.4	Ber-+ numeral	64
10.5	Ber-an	64
10.6	Reduplicated ber-	66
<b>11</b>	<b>MeN-</b>	68
11.1	Sound changes	68
11.2	Transitive meN- verbs	70
11.3	Intransitive meN- verbs	71
11.4	MeN- adjectives	73
11.5	Undifferentiated meN- and ber- verbs	73
<b>12</b>	<b>MeN-kan</b>	76
12.1	Indicating the transitive	76
12.2	Causative	77
12.3	Benefactive	78
12.4	Optional -kan	80
12.5	Undifferentiated meN-kan and ber-	80
12.6	Contrast between meN-kan and member-kan	81
12.7	MeN-kan adjectives	82
<b>13</b>	<b>MeN-i</b>	85
13.1	Various meanings of meN-i verbs	85
13.2	Contrast between meN-i and meN-kan verbs	87
13.3	Undifferentiated meN-i and meN-kan	88
13.4	Other meN-i and meN-kan contrasts	89
13.5	MeN-i and corresponding intransitive verbs	89

<b>14</b>	<b>Ter-</b>	92
	14.1 Adjective ter-	92
	14.2 Ter- verbs	93
	14.3 Other uses	97
	14.4 Ter- and ke- or ke-an	97
	14.5 Reduplicated ter-	98
<b>15</b>	<b>Ke-an</b>	100
	15.1 Ke-an verbs	100
	15.2 Ke-an adjectives	102
	15.3 Ke-an abstract nouns	105
	15.4 Ke-an with dual meanings	106
<b>16</b>	<b>PeN-</b>	108
	16.1 PeN- nouns	108
	16.2 PeN- adjectives	112
<b>17</b>	<b>-an</b>	114
	17.1 Forming a noun	114
	17.2 Forming an adjective	116
	17.3 -an with numbers	116
	17.4 Forming an adverb	117
<b>18</b>	<b>PeN-an and Per-an</b>	119
	18.1 PeN-an	119
	18.2 Per-an	120
	18.3 Pe-an	122
<b>19</b>	<b>Subject-focus and Object-focus</b>	124
	19.1 Subject-focus	124
	19.2 Object-focus	126
	19.3 Transforming subject-focus into object-focus	128
<b>20</b>	<b>Uses of -nya</b>	136
	20.1 To show possession	136
	20.2 As equivalent of 'the'	136
	20.3 Exclamation	137
	20.4 To be polite	138
	20.5 In topic-comment sentences	139
	20.6 To form abstract nouns	140

<b>21 Ways to Say 'Because'</b>	142
21.1 (Oleh) karena	142
21.2 (Oleh) sebab	143
21.3 Gara-gara	143
21.4 Mentang-mentang	143
21.5 Lantaran	144
<b>22 Ways to Say 'If'</b>	146
22.1 If	146
22.2 If ... then ...	148
22.3 If only	149
22.4 What if ...?	150
<b>23 When and While</b>	151
23.1 Ketika and waktu	151
23.2 Sementara	152
23.3 Sambil	152
23.4 Sedangkan	153
<b>24 Although and Not ... But</b>	155
24.1 Although, even though	155
24.2 Not ... but	157
<b>25 The ... More ... the ... More ...</b>	160
25.1 Makin ... makin ...	160
25.2 (Ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ...	161
25.3 Kian ... kian ...	161
<b>26 Both ... and ... / ... As Well As ...</b>	162
26.1 Baik ... maupun	162
<b>27 Let Alone</b>	164
27.1 Jangankan ... pun/saja	164
27.2 Apalagi ... saja	164
27.3 Kok ... saja and boro-boro ... saja	165
<b>28 Imperatives</b>	167
28.1 Commands	167
28.2 Requests	174
28.3 Inviting	176
28.4 Offering	178

28.5 Advising	179
28.6 How to say 'do not'	179
28.7 Imperatives in object-focus	183
<b>29 Reporting What Has Been Said</b>	<b>188</b>
29.1 'Say' verbs in Indonesian	188
29.2 Direct reporting	188
29.3 Indirect reporting	190
Glossary	195
Index	197

# Introduction

*A Student's Guide to Indonesian Grammar* is intended for secondary students in Years 10–12 and for tertiary students beginning Indonesian. It presents grammar in an accessible and fun way by focusing on its use in daily communication. Many of the exercises in this book are designed for pair or group interaction, while others are suitable for independent learning.

The earlier chapters in the book cover lighter topics, such as asking and answering questions, numbers and prepositions. Subsequent chapters cover more difficult topics. Teachers may wish to use the easier chapters in the early part of the year as a warm-up, if their students have already studied the topics beforehand, then move on to other chapters. Each chapter is self-contained, allowing teachers to select topics to coincide with other teaching materials. Cross-referencing within and between chapters provides easy access to related grammatical points.

Each chapter in this book covers one grammatical topic. For each part of the topic, an explanation is given, supported by examples. Exercises (**Latihan**) provide immediate reinforcement of the grammar learnt. Vocabulary (**Kosakata**) is given for many of the exercises. Where a dictionary may be required, this is clearly specified.

Grammar is an integral part of language use. It forms part of how people communicate with each other in daily life. Often a communicative situation determines people's choice of words and way of saying things. For example, people may speak differently in informal and formal situations. In addition, people may write differently from the way they speak. The communicative dimensions are complex and are impossible to be dealt with comprehensively in a book of this sort. However, throughout this book, in the explanations of grammatical topics and in the accompanying exercises, indications are provided as to the situations in which certain language uses are most appropriate.

Additional information is given under the following headings.

- **Did you know?**
- **Note**
- **Handy expression**
- **Be careful!**

This information relates to useful expressions, cultural notes and errors to avoid, which students and teachers may find interesting and helpful.

The introduction of grammatical terms is unavoidable in a grammar book and some learners may find this rather daunting. In this book, grammatical terms are used only where no simpler alternative is available. Grammatical terms introduced for the first time are italicised and an explanation of the term is provided.

# Acknowledgments

The suggestion for this book was first put to me by Ray O'Farrell, the publishing director at Oxford University Press, when my son Haris was merely three months-old. A year later, I began to work on the manuscript. Ray has since moved to another position and so has not seen this work in its completed form, but I am very grateful to him for initiating the project in the first place. Lisa Carroll, my publisher, has followed this project through. Many thanks also go to her.

This book has benefited greatly from comments and criticisms from many people. I would especially like to thank Linda Hibbs, Paul Fyffe, Nyoman Riasa and an anonymous reviewer, who all made detailed comments on the manuscript. My students at La Trobe University trialed the chapters and questioned a number of points. I much appreciate their useful suggestions. My thanks also go to those who furnished examples or made suggestions through various discussions on Indonesian grammar, particularly Umar Muslim, Harry Aveling, and Peter Chamberlain. Ron Baird and Tracy Lee in the Department of Asian Studies at La Trobe University provided much needed technical assistance. I thank them both for their help. This book owes a great deal of its present form to my editors, Stephen Roche and Jenny Bilos. I am very grateful to both of them for their hard work.

Some of the ideas in this book have been inspired by other works on grammar, in particular *An A-Z of English Grammar & Usage* by Geoffrey Leech (Longman, 1989), *Grammar Practice Activities* by Penny Ur (Cambridge University Press, 1988), and *Indonesian Reference Grammar* by James Sneddon (Allen & Unwin, 1996).

This book is for Haris, from whose mouth springs forth ever so effortlessly one object-focus sentence after another.



# Source Acknowledgments

The author and publisher wish to thank copyright holders for granting permission to reproduce copyright materials. Copyright holders are acknowledged where known, otherwise sources are indicated.--

*The Adventures of TINTIN* by Hergè © Moulinsart SA, Belgium: pp. 104 (top), 168, 169 and 181. Descriptions and photos of Kemiri and Pala dan Bunga Pala sourced from *Masakan Indonesia*, PT Gramedia Pustaka Utama, Jakarta, 1997: p. 133. Sumpah Pemuda (Youth Pledge), Youth Conference, 28 October 1928: p. 67. Song lyrics from *Jika* written by Melly Goeslaw and Ari Lasso: p. 148. 'Fisika itu Asyik' advertisement, *Kompas*, Jakarta, 13 February 2000: p. 186.

Every effort has been made to trace the original source of all material reproduced in this book. Where the attempt has been unsuccessful, the author and publisher would be pleased to hear from the copyright holder concerned to rectify the omission.



# Asking and Answering Questions

## Asking questions

There are different ways of asking questions in Indonesian, as in English. Sentences that ask questions are called *interrogative* sentences. In this chapter we look at ways of asking and answering questions.

### Raised intonation

One simple way of asking questions in Indonesian is by raising our intonation. In writing, this is indicated by a question mark. Except for this question mark, the sentence looks exactly the same as a statement.

**Kamu mahasiswa?**

Are you a university student? (Literally: You are a university student?)

**Anda tinggal di sini?**

Do you live here? (Literally: You live here?)

**Dia sakit?**

Is he/she sick? (Literally: He/she is sick?)

### Using *apa(kah)*

Another way of asking questions is by using **apakah** at the beginning of a sentence. The word **apakah**, like the word 'do' in English when you ask 'Do you live here?', does not have a meaning in itself; it simply tells us that the sentence is a question. **Apakah** makes the question sound formal.

**Apakah anda tinggal di sini?**

Do you live here?

**Apakah dia suka apel?**

Does he/she like apples?

You can make the questions less formal by dropping the **-kah** at the end of this question word.

**Apa anda tinggal di sini?**

**Apa dia suka apel?**



**Note**

Apa also means 'what'. You will know which one is intended by remembering this: apa as a question word (short for apakah) is placed at the beginning of the sentence, whereas apa (what) can also be placed at the end.

Question word:

Apa itu apel?  
Is that an apple?

'What':

Apa nama apel itu?  
What is the name of that apple?

Nama apel itu apa?  
What is the name of that apple?



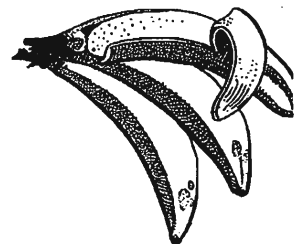
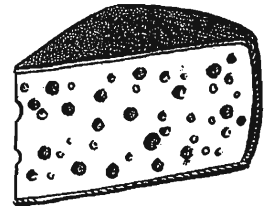
## LATIHAN 1

Ask a question in Indonesian about each of the following pictures using raised intonation, **apa(kah)** or **apa**.

Example:

**Apa(kah) ini apel? Ini apa?**

KOSAKATA	
ape	apple
burung	bird
es krim	ice cream
jeruk	orange
kopi	coffee
kue ulang tahun	birthday cake
nanas	pineapple
nasi	cooked rice
pisang	banana
susu	milk



ded  
h) i.  
t) can

atures using



## Questions with 'wh-' words

Some questions are referred to in English as 'wh-' questions because most of the question words start with 'wh-'; for example, 'what', 'who', 'where' and 'when'. The Indonesian equivalents of these question words are discussed below.

### APA: 'WHAT'

**Apa** is used to ask about objects, concrete or abstract. It means 'what' or 'what kind of'.

**Apa nama binatang itu?**

What is the name of that animal?

**Musik apa itu?**

What kind of music is that?

**Nama sekolah itu apa?**

What is the name of that school? (Literally: The name of that school is what?)

### SIAPA: 'WHO'

**Siapa** is used to ask questions to do with a person, such as a person's name, who a person is, or to whom an object belongs.

**Siapa dia?**

Who is he/she?

**Siapa namanya?**

What is his/her name?

**Tas siapa ini?**

Whose bag is this?

(The bag is associated with the person who owns it.)



#### Be careful!

In English we use 'what' when asking names (for example, 'What is your name?'). Indonesian speakers think of the person when asking the same question, so they use **siapa**, not **apa**. If you use **apa**, it sounds like you are asking about an object rather than a person.

### BERAPA: 'HOW MANY', 'HOW MUCH'

**Berapa** is used to ask questions to do with numbers and quantity, such as the number of people, weight and measurements.

**Berapa orang datang ke pesta itu?**

How many people came to that party?

**Halaman berapa?**

What page? (In Indonesian the question literally means 'Page how many?')

**Berapa** is used because the answer has to do with numbers.)

You can also add **ke** to this question word to mean 'what number' in a numerical series.

**A: Kamu anak keberapa?**

Which child are you? (Literally: What number child are you?)

**B: Saya anak ke dua.**

I am the second child.

## MANA

**Mana** is used in questions, usually not by itself, but attached to the preposition **di**, **ke** or **dari**: **di mana** (where), **ke mana** (where to), **dari mana** (where from). These expressions can be placed either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence.

**Di mana kamu tinggal?**

Where do you live?

**Mereka pergi ke mana?**

Where are they going?/Where did they go?

**Dari mana uang ini?**

Where is this money from? (Where did you get it from?)

**Mana** can also be preceded by the word **yang** to ask 'which one'.

**Yang mana mobilmu?**

Which one is your car?

**Topimu yang mana?**

Which one is your hat?

---

## KAPAN: 'WHEN'

**Kapan** is used to ask about a particular point in time or duration.

**Kapan liburan sekolah mulai?**

When does the school holiday start?

**Kapan anda akan datang?**

When are you coming?

Even though **kapan** translates into English as 'when', it is only used in questions. We cannot use it as a *conjunction* (to connect one part of a sentence with another), as in 'I was watching television when she arrived' or 'When I was born, my mother was 33'. For expressions like these, we use **ketika** or **waktu**.

---

## MENGAPA, KENAPA: 'WHY'

**Mengapa** and **kenapa** both mean 'why'. However, **kenapa** is more informal.

**Mengapa anda terlambat?**

Why are you late?

**Kenapa kamu diam saja?**

Why are you quiet (not saying anything)?

---

## BAGAIMANA: 'HOW'

**Bagaimana** is used in different situations, from a simple everyday question, such as 'how are you', to ways of doing something.

**Bagaimana kabarmu? (= Apa kabar?)**

How are you?

**Bagaimana caranya mengupas kelapa?**

How do we open (literally 'peel') a coconut?



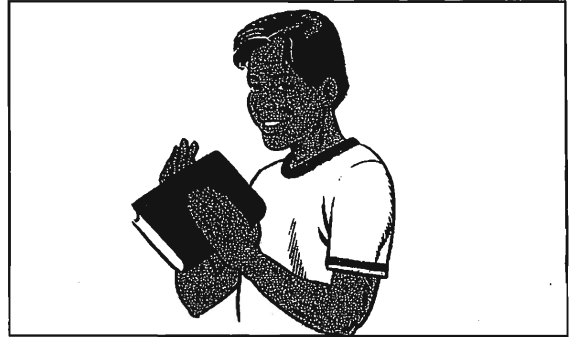
## LATIHAN 2

Ask a question in Indonesian about each of these pictures using specific question words ('wh-' question words).

1 Who is she?



2 What page, Miss?



3 How are you?



4 Why is he crying?



### Using tags *bukan* and *ya*

Another form of question is with tags, such as **bukan** and **ya**. This type of question is more like seeking confirmation from the person to whom you are talking. **Bukan** is formal and is therefore not suitable to use with friends. Its short version, **kan**, is more informal and is equivalent to **ya** when used in questions. Both tags are widely used in spoken Indonesian.



**Anda guru, bukan?**

You are a teacher, aren't you?

**Saudara setuju dengan kami, bukan?**

You agree with us, don't you?

**Kamu tinggal di rumah itu kan?**

You live in that house, don't you?

**Kalian bergurau kan?**

You are all joking, aren't you?

**Ini kelas bahasa Indonesia ya?**

This is Indonesian class, isn't it?

**Jill orang Australia ya?**

Jill is an Australian, isn't she?

## Giving answers

Just as there are different ways of asking questions, there are different ways of responding to them. Some common ways of answering questions are discussed below.

### Positive answers with *ya* or *iya*

To give a positive answer in Indonesian, we can use the word *ya*.

**A: Anda wartawan?**

Are you a journalist?

**B: Ya.**

Yes.

Often people say *iya* to emphasise or confirm an answer. *Iya* can be used, for example, to respond to tag questions.

**A: Kamu kakak Susan kan?**

You are Susan's older sibling, aren't you?

**B: Iya.**

Yes.

**Anak: Pak, nanti liburan sekolah kita ke Jakarta ya?**

Dad, next school holiday we're going to Jakarta, aren't we?

**Bapak: Iya.**

Yes, all right.



## LATIHAN 3

Ask questions using the tags **bukan**, **kan** or **ya**. Remember that these tags differ in their degree of formality. Use them appropriately by taking into account the person to whom you are talking. Answer each question using *ya* or *iya*.

- 1 To a stranger at a bank: 'Today is 15 June, isn't it?'
- 2 To your mother: 'This chicken is for me, isn't it?'
- 3 To your older sister: 'You like that film, don't you?'

- 4 To your teacher: 'Our homework is page 12, isn't it?'
- 5 To a bus driver: 'This bus goes to the shopping centre, doesn't it?' ('Go to' = **ke**. You do not need to translate 'go', because **ke** + place-name already means 'go'; for example, **ke toko** means 'go to the shop'.)

---

### Negative answers with *tidak*, *bukan* or *belum*

To give a negative answer in Indonesian, we need to choose between three words: **tidak**, **bukan** or **belum**.

---

#### BUKAN

**Bukan** is used to negate a noun (that is, when you want to negate a thing, whether concrete, such as a book, or abstract, such as a name). In the examples below, the negated words are underlined.

- A:** Ini bukumu?  
Is this your book?
- B:** **Bukan.**  
No, it's not.
- A:** Nama anda Raymond?  
Is your name Raymond?
- B:** **Bukan.**  
No, it's not.

---

#### TIDAK

**Tidak** is used to negate everything else other than a noun (verbs, adjectives, adverbs).

- A:** Bapakmu bekerja di kantor itu?  
Does your father work in that office?
- B:** **Tidak.**  
No, he doesn't.
- A:** Apakah anda suka film horor?  
Do you like horror films?
- B:** **Tidak.**  
No, I don't.

---

#### BELUM

**Belum** means 'not yet' and is used to indicate that something is not yet done.

- Leni:** **Nia**, kamu sudah makan?  
Nia, have you eaten?
- Nia:** **Belum.**  
No, not yet.

**Belum** can also be used to answer the 'Have you ever ...?' type of question.

- A:** Apakah anda pernah ke Indonesia?  
Have you ever been to Indonesia?
- B:** **Belum.**  
No, I haven't. (No, not yet.)

**A: Kamu pernah makan durian?**

Have you ever eaten a durian?

**B: Belum.**

No, I haven't. (No, not yet.)



## LATIHAN 4

The following game, called **Siapa saya?**, is an exercise in asking questions with raised intonation and **apa(kah)**, and giving positive answers with **ya** and negative answers with **tidak** or **bukan**.

### Procedure:

One person in the class is chosen to assume the identity of a certain character (person, cartoon character or an animal). The character is chosen by the rest of the class without the person knowing. (Ask this person to go out of the room while the rest of the class decide on the character.) Put a paper hat on the person with the character's name written on it or get the person to sit with his or her back to the board, then write the character's name on the board.

The person has to start by asking questions to find out who he or she is. The person can only ask questions that require 'yes' or 'no' answers. The class can only answer **ya**, **tidak**, **bukan** or **belum**. No other information should be given. The person cannot ask, for example, 'What is my profession?' or 'Where do I live?'. Here are some examples of such questions.

**Person A: Saya orang?**

Am I a person?

**Class: Ya.**

Yes.

**Person A: Apakah saya laki-laki?**

Am I male?

**Class: Bukan.**

No.

**Person A: Saya sudah pernah ke Australia?**

Have I been to (= visited) Australia?

**Class: Belum.**

Not yet.

You can go on as long as you like with one person or limit the number of questions and, if the person cannot find out the identity of his or her character, he or she has to sit down.

### Positive answers with *mau*, *sudah*, *boleh* or *bisa*

**Mau**, **sudah**, **boleh** and **bisa** are used in answers to questions that also contain them. **Mau** expresses a want or wish; **sudah** indicates that an action has been completed (the opposite of **belum**); **boleh** shows permission; **bisa** shows capability or permission, depending on the context. When used as permission, **bisa** means the same as **boleh**. These words are sometimes preceded by **ya** or **iya** when used as an answer.

**A: Mau makan?**

Do you want to eat? (Notice that the subject 'you' is often not mentioned in Indonesian.)

**B: Iya, mau.**

Yes, I do.

**A: Kamu sudah mandi?**

Have you bathed?

**B: Sudah.**

Yes, I have.

**A: Boleh/bisa saya pinjam topinya?**

May/can I borrow the hat? (= your hat) → permission

**B: Ya, boleh/bisa.**

Yes, you may/can.

**A: Bisa kita keluar lewat sini?**

Can we go out this way? → capability

**B: Ya, bisa.**

Yes, you can.

To emphasise a positive answer, we can add the word **saja** after **mau**, **boleh** or **bisa** (but not after **sudah**).

**A: Boleh makan kuenya?**

Can I eat the cake? ('I' is not mentioned.)

**B: Ya, boleh saja.**

Yes, of course.

**A: Mau jalan-jalan?**

Do you want to go for a walk? ('You' is not mentioned.)

**B: Ya, mau saja.**

Yes, of course.

It is common to further emphasise the answer by reduplicating the answer word, followed by **saja**. This is not applicable to **belum**.

**A: Bisa pinjam CD-nya?**

Can I borrow the CD? (= your CD)

**B: Iya, bisa-bisa saja.**

Yes, of course you can.

**A: Kamu mau kopi?**

Would you like a coffee?

**B: Ya, mau-mau saja.**

Yes, of course I would.



## LATIHAN 5

Work in pairs, taking turns to ask and answer the following questions in Indonesian. The (+) symbol means that the answer must be positive; the (-) symbol means that the answer must be negative.



### Note

If you interview your teacher, do not use **kamu**. Rather, you should say 'Bu + her name' or 'Pak + his name'.

- 1 A: Murid boleh merokok di sekolah ini?  
B: (+)
- 2 A: Kamu mau belajar bahasa Indonesia di Jakarta?  
B: (+)
- 3 A: Boleh bapak saya pinjam mobilmu?  
B: (-)
- 4 A: Kamu pernah ke Spanyol?  
B: (+)
- 5 A: Kamu menelepon saya kemarin?  
B: (-)
- 6 A: Kamu sudah mandi?  
B: (-)
- 7 A: Adikmu mau ayam goreng ini?  
B: (-)
- 8 A: Pagi ini kamu sudah makan?  
B: (+)
- 9 A: Apakah kamu pernah mencoba makan durian?  
B: (+)
- 10 A: Menurut anda, harga mobil itu mahal atau tidak?  
B: (+)

### KOSAKATA

mencoba	to try
menurut	according to
pernah	have been to have ever



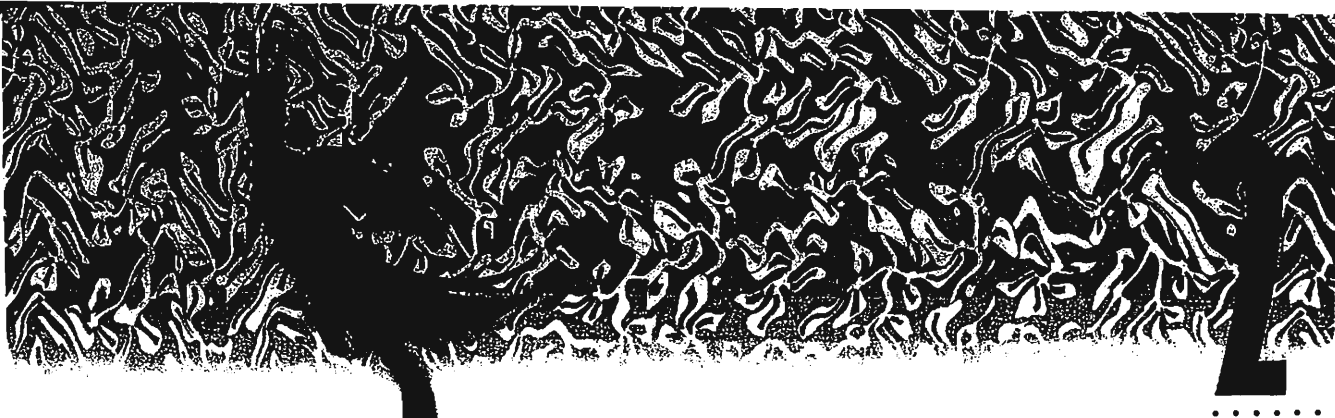
## LATIHAN 6

Conduct a survey among your classmates to find out their habits, likes and dislikes. Copy the following tables, turning the information in the left column of each table into questions. Then interview five people, asking them the questions that you have prepared, and record their responses.

**Kesukaan: makanan dan minuman**  
Favourites: food and drink

	TEMAN 1	TEMAN 2	TEMAN 3	TEMAN 4	TEMAN 5
banyak makan buah-buahan eat a lot of fruit					
sering makan pizza often eat pizza					
banyak minum susu drink a lot of milk					
sering makan es krim often eat icecream					





## Noun Phrases

In this chapter we will learn about how a noun can combine with other words. For example:

<u>baju</u> <u>biru</u>	blue <u>shirt</u>
<u>guru</u> <u>saya</u>	my <u>teacher</u>
<u>murid</u> <u>itu</u>	that <u>student</u>

These combinations of words are called *phrases*.

A phrase is a meaningful group of words, one of which is usually the main word (technically called the *head*). A phrase in which the head is a noun is called a *noun phrase*.

In Indonesian noun phrases, the head comes before the other word(s), while in English it is generally the other way round. Here are the combinations that you will find in Indonesian:

- noun + possessor
- noun + another noun
- noun + adjective
- noun + verb

For simplicity, head nouns are referred to as nouns throughout the rest of this chapter, and they are underlined for easy identification.

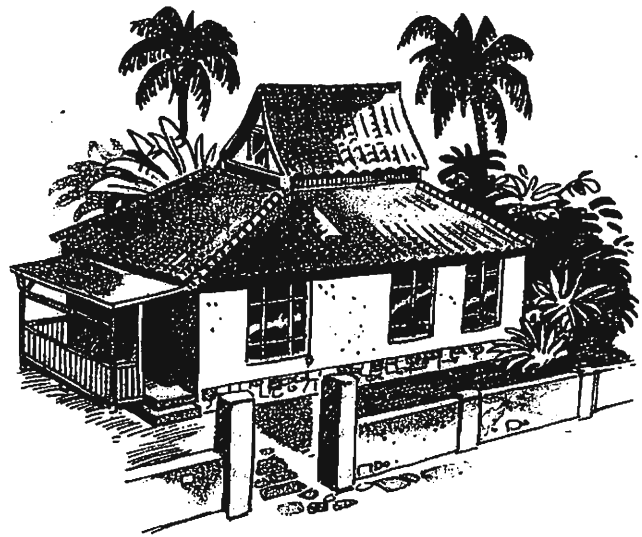
### Noun + possessor

In this type of noun phrase, the noun refers to something that belongs to a person or animal. For instance, in buku Nina (Nina's book) below, a book is being referred to, so the word buku comes first. Nina (name of a person) specifies to whom the book belongs, so it is placed after the noun. Similarly, in ayah saya (my father), 'father' is being referred to, and the word 'my' specifies that the father belongs to you, so ayah comes first and saya after.



Widya has hid page 13 somewhere in this book.  
...If you find it, you win a prize!

### 3 Tini's teacher's house



## Noun + another noun

In this type of noun phrase, the second noun is also related to the head noun, but not as a possessor as in the above. The second noun may specify the location mentioned in the head, such as 'school library' (library located at a school) or 'football field' (a field for playing football), or give other specifications.

NOUN	ANOTHER NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>perpustakaan</u> library	<u>sekolah</u> school	school <u>library</u>
<u>lapangan</u> field	<u>sepak bola</u> football	football <u>field</u>
<u>sampul</u> cover	<u>buku</u> book	book <u>cover</u>
<u>merek</u> brand	<u>komputer</u> computer	computer <u>brand name</u>



#### Did you know?

The word for 'glove' in Indonesian is:

**Kaos**

Stretch fabric

**tangan**

hand

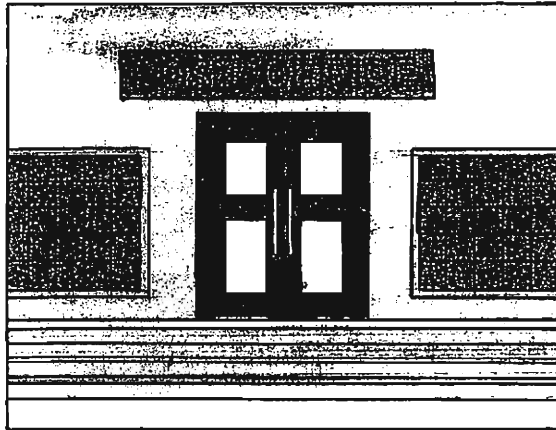
→ glove



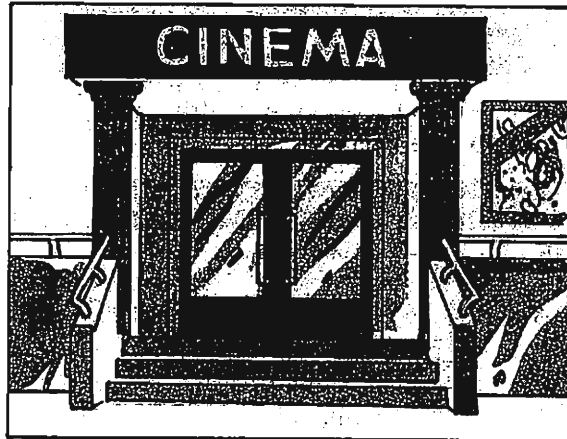
## LATIHAN 2

Write the Indonesian equivalents of the English noun phrases describing these pictures.

### 1 Post office



### 2 Movie theatre



### 3 Rubbish bin



## Noun + adjective

In this type of noun phrase, the adjective that follows the noun describes such things as the size, colour, taste or, generally, the quality of the thing referred to by the noun.

NOUN	ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>rumah</u> house	<b>besar</b> big	big <u>house</u>
<u>sepeda</u> bicycle	<b>kecil</b> small	small <u>bicycle</u>
<u>balon</u> balloon	<b>hijau</b> green	green <u>balloon</u>
<u>teh</u> tea	<b>manis</b> sweet	sweet <u>tea</u>
<u>rumah</u> house	<b>sakit</b> sick	hospital (literally ' <u>house</u> for the sick')

## Noun + verb

When the noun is followed by a verb, the verb indicates the activity for which the noun is used.

NOUN	VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>rumah</u> house	<b>makan</b> eat	eating <u>house</u> , restaurant
<u>gedung</u> hall	<b>olahraga</b> sport	sports <u>hall</u>
<u>kamar</u> room	<b>mandi</b> bath	<u>bathroom</u>
<u>papan</u> board	<b>tulis</b> to write	blackboard/whiteboard
<u>tempat</u> place	<b>tidur</b> to sleep	<u>place</u> to sleep → bed

We can also add an adjective to the phrase.

NOUN + VERB	ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>rumah makan</u> restaurant	<b>mahal</b> expensive	expensive <u>restaurant</u>
<u>gedung olahraga</u> sports hall	<b>megah</b> grand	grand <u>sports hall</u>
<u>kamar mandi</u> bathroom	<b>kotor</b> dirty	dirty <u>bathroom</u>

## Noun + demonstrative

A *demonstrative* is a word that can be used to point at something, such as *ini* (this) and *itu* (that). In this type of noun phrase, the demonstrative is placed after the noun.

NOUN	DEMONSTRATIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>universitas</u> university	<i>itu</i> that	that <u>university</u>
<u>kotak</u> box	<i>ini</i> this	this <u>box</u>

To form more complex noun phrases, you can combine any of the above noun phrases with the demonstrative.

NOUN + POSSESSOR	DEMONSTRATIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>mobil</u> ayah saya my father's car	<i>ini</i> this	this <u>car</u> of my father's
<u>perpustakaan</u> sekolah school library	<i>itu</i> that	that school <u>library</u>
<u>rumah</u> besar big house	<i>ini</i> this	this big <u>house</u>
<u>rumah</u> makan mahal expensive restaurant	<i>itu</i> that	that expensive eating <u>house/restaurant</u>



### Note

*Ini* and *itu* can also be placed before a noun phrase to mean 'this is/was' or 'these are/were'.

*Ini rumah saya.*

This is my house.

*Itu kantor pos.*

That is the post office.



## LATIHAN 3

Below are noun phrases that are *noun + adjective*, *noun + verb* and *noun + demonstrative*. Translate each phrase into Indonesian. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 This apple
- 2 Bedroom (in Indonesian, literally 'sleeping room')
- 3 These students
- 4 Those bicycles
- 5 Brown eyes
- 6 Restaurant (in Indonesian, literally 'eating house')



## LATIHAN 4

Translate the following more complex noun phrases into Indonesian, working your way from right to left. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Example:

That yellow door:	<b>Pintu</b>	<b>kuning</b>	<b>itu</b>
	door	yellow	that

- 1 My favourite song
- 2 Big round hat
- 3 Small red bird
- 4 Delicious fried rice
- 5 Black long pants



## LATIHAN 5

One way of forming simple sentences in Indonesian is by combining complex noun phrases with an adjective or another noun. Write simple sentences by finding the Indonesian equivalent of the noun phrases and the adjectives below. Your sentences will have this structure: *complex noun phrase + adjective* or *complex noun phrase + noun*.

Example:

Complex noun phrase		Adjective
Their big house	→	new
<b>Rumah besar mereka</b>	→	<b>baru</b>
<b>Rumah besar mereka baru</b> = Their big house is new.		

Notice that in simple sentences like this, the word 'is' need not be translated into Indonesian. When you read the sentence, though, you will need to give a short pause where the arrow is.

- 1 Her sports shoes → expensive
- 2 Their large bathroom → green
- 3 That movie theatre → small
- 4 My motorbike → Honda
- 5 My mother's name → Jane



## LATIHAN 6

Now that you know how to form simple and complex noun phrases and also how to write some simple sentences, try to give a simple description in Indonesian of a person or an object by using similar forms. The models below are provided to help you write your own descriptions. The noun phrases are underlined.

Present your description orally to the class. Remember to pause after the noun phrase.

- 1 Description of oneself:  
Nama saya Intan.  
My name is Intan.



idor a,  
ult

**Umur saya 20 tahun.**

My age is 20 years. → I am 20 years old.

**Kota kelahiran saya Melbourne.**

My birthplace is Melbourne.

**Makanan kesukaan saya nasi goreng dan sambal.**

My favourite food is fried rice and chilli sauce.

**2 Description of a pet:**

**Nama kucing saya Manis.**

My cat's name is Manis.

**Warna bulu Manis putih.**

The colour of Manis's fur is white.

**Makanan kesukaan Manis ikan goreng.**

Manis's favourite food is fried fish.

**Umur Manis 20 bulan.**

Manis's age is 20 months. → Manis is 20 months old.

combining  
Write simple  
n phrases and  
re: complex

d no. sa  
hough, you

n phrases  
simple  
g similar  
our own

pause after

---

## Summary

- Noun phrases can be:
  - noun + possessor*; for example, **topi saya**
  - noun + another noun*; for example, **rumah makan**
  - noun + adjective*; for example, **rumah besar**
  - noun + verb*; for example, **kamar mandi**
- Remember that, as a general rule, the thing to which you are referring comes first and everything else comes after it. When translating complex noun phrases from English, work your way from right to left.



# Numbers, Classifiers and Quantity

## Numbers

### Cardinal and ordinal numbers

Cardinal numbers are those we use for counting things (for example, one, two, three, one hundred), while ordinal numbers are those we use to say things in sequence. The tables below show how these two kinds of numbers are expressed in Indonesian.

#### NUMBERS 1–10

##### CARDINAL NUMBERS

0: nol  
1: satu  
2: dua  
3: tiga  
4: empat  
5: lima  
6: enam  
7: tujuh  
8: delapan  
9: sembilan  
10: sepuluh

##### ORDINAL NUMBERS

Add prefix *ke-* to the cardinal number (except \**pertama* = first)

-  
1st: \**pertama* (not *kesatu*)  
2nd: *kedua*  
3rd: *ketiga*  
4th: *keempat*  
5th: *kelima*  
6th: *keenam*  
7th: *ketujuh*  
8th: *kedelapan*  
9th: *kesembilan*  
10th: *kesepluluh*

## NUMBERS 11-20

### CARDINAL NUMBERS

For 'teen' add *belas*

11: <b>sebelas</b>
12: <b>dua belas</b>
13: <b>tiga belas</b>
14: <b>empat belas</b>
15: <b>lima belas</b>
16: <b>enam belas</b>
17: <b>tujuh belas</b>
18: <b>delapan belas</b>
19: <b>sembilan belas</b>
20: <b>dua puluh</b>

### ORDINAL NUMBERS

Add prefix *ke-* to the cardinal number

11th: <b>kebelas</b>
12th: <b>kedua belas</b>
13th: <b>ketiga belas</b>
14th: <b>keempat belas</b>
15th: <b>kelima belas</b>
16th: <b>keenam belas</b>
17th: <b>ketujuh belas</b>
18th: <b>kedelapan belas</b>
19th: <b>kesembilan belas</b>
20th: <b>kedua puluh</b>

## NUMBERS IN THE MULTIPLICATION OF TENS

### CARDINAL NUMBERS

Add *puluh*  
(see also 10 and 20 above)

30: <b>tiga puluh</b>
40: <b>empat puluh</b>
60: <b>enam puluh</b>
80: <b>delapan puluh</b>
90: <b>sembilan puluh</b>

### ORDINAL NUMBERS

Add prefix *ke-* to the cardinal number

30th: <b>ketiga puluh</b>
40th: <b>keempat puluh</b>
60th: <b>keenam puluh</b>
80th: <b>kedelapan puluh</b>
90th: <b>kesembilan puluh</b>

## BIGGER NUMBERS

hundred:	<b>ratus</b>
thousand:	<b>ribu</b>
million:	<b>juta</b>
billion:	<b>miliar</b>



### Note

The prefix *se-* in numbers means 'one' (but it is not used for the number 1), hence:

<b>sepuluh</b>	(one ten)	10
<b>sebelas</b>	(one teen)	11
<b>seratus</b>	(one hundred)	100
<b>seribu</b>	(one thousand)	1000
<b>sejuta</b>	(one million)	1000.000
<b>semiliar</b>	(one billion)	1000.000.000

To say some big numbers, follow the pattern shown below.

<b>3500:</b>	3000 = <b>tiga ribu</b>
	500 = <b>lima ratus</b>
	→ <b>tiga ribu lima ratus</b>

6750: 6000 = enam ribu  
700 = tujuh ratus  
50 = lima puluh  
→ enam ribu tujuh ratus lima puluh

1.450.500: 1000.000.000 = sejuta  
450.000 = empat ratus lima puluh ribu  
500 = lima ratus  
→ sejuta empat ratus lima puluh ribu lima ratus



**Did you know?**

A soccer team in Indonesian is called *kesebelasan* (the eleven) because there are eleven people in a team.



## LATIHAN 1

---

Can you say the following numbers in Indonesian?

- 1 15
- 2 310
- 3 564
- 4 2701
- 5 7550
- 6 1683
- 7 87.575
- 8 10.950
- 9 33.845
- 10 1.250.000



## LATIHAN 2

---

How do you say the following in Indonesian? Say the non-number word first, then the ordinal number. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Example:

Eighth person  
**Orang kedelapan**

- 1 Twenty-first century
  - 2 Seventeenth birthday
  - 3 First child
  - 4 Fifth month
  - 5 Second day
  - 6 Third book
  - 7 Tenth film
  - 8 Fifth president
  - 9 One thousandth print
  - 10 Second car
-

## Ke-: 'the + number'

The prefix **ke-** followed by a number, as in ordinal numbers, can also be used to mean 'the + number'. In this case, **ke-** is attached to the number, then followed by the noun.

**ketiga** anak itu  
the three children

**kedua** guru itu  
the two teachers  
(both teachers)

**Kelima** mahasiswa itu mengambil mata kuliah Antropologi.  
The five university students take Anthropology as their subject.

**Keempat** temannya sudah pindah ke kota lain.  
The four of his/her friends have moved to another city.

We can omit the noun if it is already understood or mentioned before. However, we need to add **-nya** after **ke + number**.

**Keduanya** laki-laki.  
Both are boys. → (referring to children)

**Ketiganya** tidak mau bicara.  
The three of them did not want to talk.

Sometimes the number is reduplicated for emphasis.

**Ketiga-tiganya** tidak mau bicara.  
All three of them did not want to talk.

## Fractions

The Indonesian word for 'fractions' is **angka pecahan**, which literally means 'broken number'. To say 'one ...th', the prefix **seper-** is added to the number, except for 'half', which is prefixed by **se-**.

<b>setengah</b>	one-half
<b>sepertiga</b>	one-third
<b>seperempat</b>	one-quarter
<b>seperdelapan</b>	one-eighth
<b>seperseratus</b>	one-hundredth

For other fractions, add **per-** only to the larger number and place the smaller number before it.

<b>dua pertiga</b>	two-thirds
<b>dua perseratus</b>	two-hundredths



### Did you know?

The word **tengah** 'half, middle' can be used to form other nouns.

<b>pertengahan</b>	middle (usually for calendar time)
<b>pertengahan bulan</b>	middle of the month
<b>pertengahan tahun</b>	middle of the year
<b>tengah hari</b>	middle of the day; midday
<b>tengah jalan</b>	middle of the road

Likewise, we can also form other nouns from the numbers *tiga* and *empat*.

<b>pertigaan</b>	T-intersection
<b>perempatan</b>	crossroad



### LATIHAN 3

Say the following fractions in Indonesian.

1 $\frac{5}{6}$	6 $1\frac{3}{4}$
2 $\frac{1}{10}$	7 $\frac{1}{5}$
3 $7\frac{1}{2}$	8 $6\frac{2}{3}$
4 $\frac{1}{5}$	9 $9\frac{1}{4}$
5 $\frac{3}{8}$	10 $8\frac{1}{4}$

## Classifiers

*Classifiers* are words that are used to group things in the world (according to shape, number, size and so on). Many languages have classifiers, including English. For example:

- a bar of soap or chocolate
- a bunch of flowers
- a flock of sheep
- a herd of cattle

Classifiers are used to classify, not only those things that the words literally stand for, but also other things. For example, in Indonesian *ekor* literally means 'tail'; but the word is used as a classifier for animals that have tails as well as for those that do not.

<b>batang</b>	literally 'log' (for example, for timber, pencil, stick)
<b>buah</b>	literally 'fruit' (for example, for bicycle, car, computer, essay, book)
<b>ekor</b>	literally 'tail' (for example, for all animals)
<b>helai</b>	literally 'sheet' (for example, for paper, pieces of clothing, etc.)
<b>orang</b>	literally 'person' (for example, for people, such as teacher, student)
<b>potong</b>	literally 'cut' (for example, for pieces of clothing, sliced things)
<b>sisir</b>	literally 'comb' (for example, for a hand of bananas)

As in English, we use these classifiers by putting in the number first, followed by the classifier, then the noun. Notice below that the prefix *se-* for 'one' is attached to the classifier; any other number is written separately.

<b>se+batang</b>	<b>pohon</b>	→	a tree
one+classifier	tree		
<b>dua</b>	<b>ekor</b>	<b>kucing</b>	→ two cats
number	classifier	thing	

s tiga and

To ask questions with classifiers, use **berapa**, followed by the classifier, then the noun.

**Berapa batang pohon?**  
How many trees?

**5 batang.**  
Five.

**Berapa ekor kucing?**  
How many cats?

**Dua ekor.**  
Two.



**Be careful!**

When we use **se-** with a classifier to mean 'one', it must be attached to the classifier, not the noun. We cannot say, for example:

sesapi                      a cow  
sebuku                     a book

orld  
ges have



**LATIHAN 4**

Use classifiers to identify the following things in Indonesian.

e  
lonesian  
er for

:k)  
puter, essay,

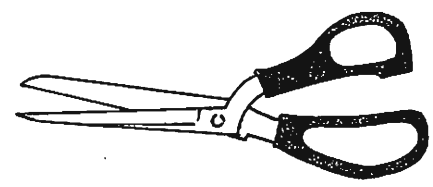
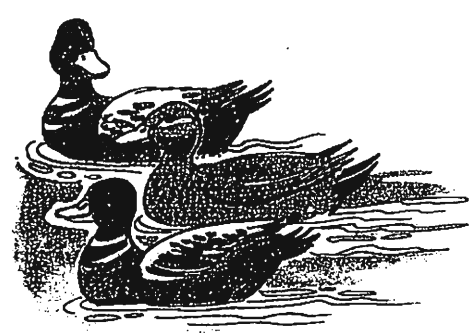
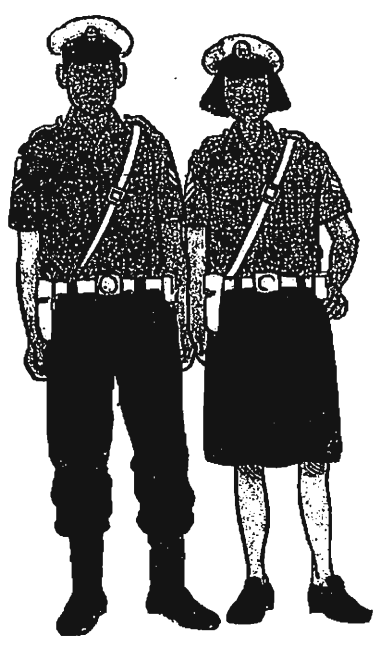
f clothing, fabric)  
as teacher,

g, sliced things,

anas)

mber first,  
t the prefix  
is written

ats



## Quantity

To show quantity, we can use the following words.

- **banyak**
- **sedikit**
- **beberapa**
- **kurang lebih**
- **jumlah**

### **Banyak and sedikit**

To say 'many, much, a lot', use **banyak**. This word can be used for things that are countable, such as people and books, as well as for things that are not countable, such as water and sugar.

**Banyak** orang datang ke rapat itu.

Many people came to that meeting.

Tolong beri **banyak** sambal ya.

Please give a lot of sambal (chilli paste).

To say 'a little' or 'few', use **sedikit**. Like **banyak**, we can use this word both for countable and uncountable things.

Saya suka minum teh dengan **sedikit** gula.

I like drinking tea with a little sugar.

Murid di kelas ini hanya **sedikit**.

The students in this class are few.

### **Beberapa**

To say 'a few, a number of', use **beberapa**.

**Beberapa** pekerja dipecat karena ketahuan mencuri uang.

A number of workers were fired because they were caught stealing money.

### **Kurang lebih**

**Kurang lebih** literally means 'less, more' and is used to say 'approximately'.

Panjang meja ini **kurang lebih** satu setengah meter.

The length of this table is approximately one and a half metres.

### **Jumlah**

**Jumlah** means 'total, the total number of'.

**Jumlah** wartawan yang ke sana dua puluh orang.

The total number of journalists who went there was twenty.



pertokoan di

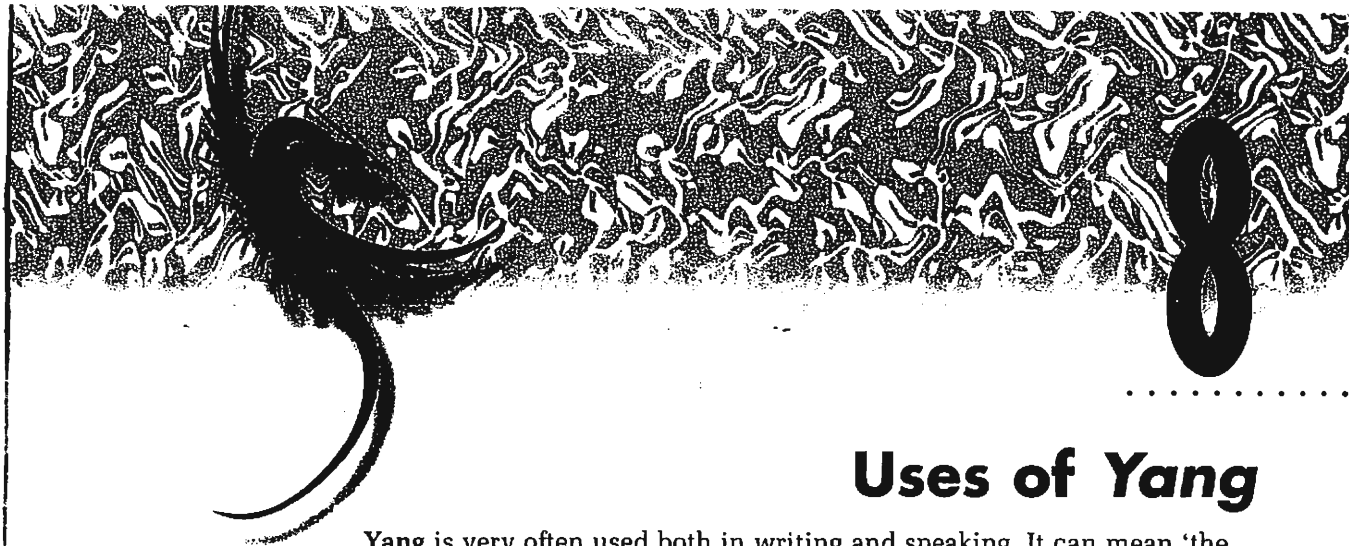
gad lo.

, using lebih,  
: group.

ian  
ian  
ian

Oktober  
Nopember  
Desember

or se ...



## Uses of Yang

Yang is very often used both in writing and speaking. It can mean 'the one' or 'which, who, whom', depending on the sentence.

**Yang biru itu pena saya.**

The blue one is my pen.

**Lagu yang baru itu populer sekali.**

The song which is new is very popular.

→ The new song is very popular.

More examples of the uses of yang are given below.

### To refer to a person or thing

When used to refer to a person or thing, yang replaces the word for person (**orang**) or the word for the thing to which we are referring (for example, a pen). Yang in this case means 'the one'.

**Yang berkacamata itu adalah kakak saya.**

The one (person) who wears glasses is my older sibling.

**Kamu boleh mengambil yang merah.**

You can take the red one.



### LATIHAN 1

Here are sentences with **yang** (the one). Find out what they mean in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Saya mau **yang merah**.
- 2 **Yang berdiri di sana itu** namanya Daniel.
- 3 Kamu boleh meminjam **yang plastik**.
- 4 **Yang tersenyum itu** adalah bintang film terkenal.
- 5 **Yang terlambat** akan didenda.
- 6 **Yang tebal itu** adalah kamus Inggris-Indonesia.
- 7 Bis saya adalah **yang nomer 87**.
- 8 Buah rambutan adalah **yang berwarna merah dan berambut**.
- 9 Kunci kantor saya adalah **yang nomer 258**.
- 10 Film yang menang festival itu adalah **yang dibintangi oleh Julia Roberts**.

## To say 'the person who(m) ...' or 'the thing that ...'

When used to say 'the person who(m) ...' or 'the thing that ...', **yang** is preceded by a noun.

**Orang yang saya lihat di jalan kemarin itu adalah Bu Yani.**

Noun Who(m)

The person whom I saw on the street yesterday was Bu Yani.

**Email yang panjang itu adalah dari adiknya di Perancis.**

Noun Which

\*Literally: The e-mail that is long was from his/her younger sibling in France.

→ That long e-mail was from his/her younger sibling in France.



## LATIHAN 2

Complete the sentences in Indonesian with your own words.

Example:

**Orang yang bekerja di kantor itu semua muda.**

- 1 Foto yang ...
- 2 Restoran yang ...
- 3 Pesan yang ...
- 4 Kopi yang ...
- 5 Olahraga yang ...
- 6 Kota yang ...
- 7 Surat yang ...
- 8 Penerbangan yang ...
- 9 Alat musik yang ...
- 10 Binatang yang ...

### KATA

musik musical  
instrument  
penerbangan flight  
pesan message

## Asking 'which (one)?'

To ask 'which?' or 'which one?' we can say **yang mana?**

**Rumahmu yang mana?**

Or:

**Yang mana rumahmu?**

Which one is your house?

**Yang hijau.**

The green one.

**Mau pakai baju yang mana?**

Which shirt do you want to wear?

**Yang putih.**

The white one.



## LATIHAN 3

Work in pairs for this exercise. Below are five questions with **Yang mana bukan ...?** (Which one is not ...?). Provide a choice of five answers to each question, then ask your friend to choose the correct answer.

Example:

**Yang mana bukan nama anggota tubuh?**

Which one is not the name of a body part?

- a mata
- b kelapa
- c perut
- d mulut
- e punggung

Answer: **kelapa** (coconut)

- 1 Yang mana bukan nama orang laki-laki?
- 2 Yang mana bukan binatang berekor?
- 3 Yang mana bukan nama jenis anjing?
- 4 Yang mana bukan nama makanan?
- 5 Yang mana bukan nama alat musik?

---

## Summary

- **Yang** can mean 'the one', replacing the word for a person or thing.
- **Yang** can also be used to mean 'who(m)' or 'which' in the sense of 'the person who(m) ...' or 'the thing which ...'.
- **Yang mana:** is used to ask questions meaning 'which one'.



## Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

Traditionally, a *verb* is defined as a 'doing word' or 'action word'. While this definition may be applicable to many verbs, it is inaccurate for some others, because verbs can also refer to states or conditions. The verb **berhenti** (stop) in Indonesian, for example, means 'to be in a stationary position', so there is no action as such.

In Indonesian, we need to distinguish between *intransitive* and *transitive* verbs, according to whether the verb requires only one or more than one noun to accompany it to make sense when we use it in a sentence.

### Intransitive verbs

An *intransitive verb* is a verb that needs only one noun (or noun phrase) to accompany it in a sentence. We refer to this noun (phrase) as the *subject*. **Duduk** (sit) and **berlari** (run) are examples of intransitive verbs.

SUBJECT	INTRANSITIVE VERB
<b>Anto</b>	<b>duduk.</b>
Anto	sits.
<b>Nenek</b>	<b>berjalan.</b>
Grandmother	walks.
<b>Adik saya</b>	<b>menangis.</b>
My younger sibling	cries.

In a sentence you can add something other than a noun after the intransitive verb, such as a *prepositional phrase* (a preposition followed by a noun) or a *manner adverb* (a word placed after a verb that tells us the manner in which an action is done).



SUBJECT	INTRANSITIVE VERB	PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE
<b>Anto</b>	<b>duduk</b>	<b>di kursi.</b>
Anto	sits	on the chair.
<b>Nenek</b>	<b>berjalan</b>	<b>ke pasar.</b>
Grandmother	walks	to market.

SUBJECT	INTRANSITIVE VERB	MANNER ADVERB
<b>Ani</b>	<b>menangis</b>	<b>keras.</b>
Ani	cries	loudly.
<b>Tono</b>	<b>tidur</b>	<b>lelap.</b>
Tono	sleeps	soundly.

We can also make the sentences more complex by combining a manner adverb with a prepositional phrase.

SUBJECT	INTRANSITIVE VERB	MANNER ADVERB	PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE
<b>Tono</b>	<b>tidur</b>	<b>lelap</b>	<b>di kursi.</b>
Tono	sleeps	soundly	on the chair.
<b>Nenek</b>	<b>berjalan</b>	<b>cepat</b>	<b>ke pasar.</b>
Grandmother	walks	quickly	to market.

Intransitive verbs take different forms. Some have no affix, some have the **ber-** prefix, some have the **meN-** prefix and some have the **ter-** prefix. The tables below list only some of the intransitive verbs in each of these groups. The capital letter **N** in the prefix **meN-** indicates the sound change that occurs when the prefix is attached to a base word (see Chapter 11).

### Simple intransitive verbs (no affix)

INTRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>datang</b>	to come
<b>duduk</b>	to sit
<b>hidup</b>	to live
<b>ingat</b>	to remember
<b>jatuh</b>	to fall
<b>keluar</b>	to exit, go out of
<b>lulus</b>	to pass (an exam) or test
<b>lupa</b>	to forget
<b>mandi</b>	to bathe oneself
<b>masuk</b>	to enter, go into
<b>mulai</b>	to start, begin
<b>percaya</b>	to believe
<b>pergi</b>	to go
<b>pindah</b>	to move from one place to another

INTRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
pulang	to go home
selesai	to finish
singgah	to stop over
tahu	to know
terbang	to fly
tiba	to arrive
tidur	to sleep
tinggal	to stay, live (reside)

**Intransitive verbs with ber-**  
(For other examples, see Chapter 10.)

BASE WORD	INTRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
ajar	belajar	to learn, study
angkat	berangkat	to leave, depart
bahasa	berbahasa	to use a language
baring	berbaring	to lie down
belanja	berbelanja	to go shopping
bicara	berbicara	to speak
buat	berbuat	to do, commit
cakap	bercakap	to chat
diri	berdiri	to stand
gurau	bergurau	to joke around
hati	berhati-hati	to take care
henti	berhenti	to stop (be stationary)
hias	berhias	to groom oneself
istirahat	beristirahat	to take a rest
jalan	berjalan	to walk
kembang	berkembang	to develop
kerja	bekerja	to work
kuasa	berkuasa	to have the authority
kumpul	berkumpul	to gather
lari	berlari	to run
libur	berlibur	to go on a holiday
main	bermain	to play
nyanyi	bernyanyi	to sing
pegang	berpegang	to hold on to
perang	berperang	to engage in a war
renang	berenang	to swim
selancar	berselancar	to surf
sembahyang	bersembahyang	to pray
tandang	bertandang	to visit someone
temu	bertemu	to meet
ubah	berubah	to change

**Note**

In the verbs belajar, berenang and bekerja the 'r' in the prefix ber- is dropped. In bekerja and berenang it is dropped altogether, whereas in belajar it is replaced by 'l'.

**Intransitive verbs with meN-**

BASE WORD	INTRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
bual	membual	to boast
cangkul	mencangkul	to hoe
dengkur	mendengkur	to snore
inap	menginap	to stay the night
lompat	melompat	to jump
nyanyi	menyanyi	to sing
rangkak	merangkak	to crawl
rokok	merokok	to smoke
tangis	menangis	to cry
tari	menari	to dance
tinggal	meninggal	to die
uap	menguap	to yawn

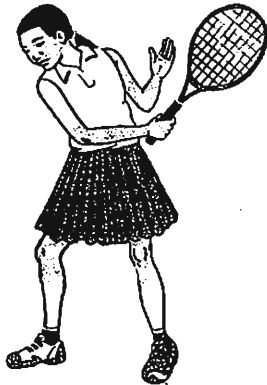
**Intransitive verbs with ter-**

BASE WORD	INTRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
senyum	tersenyum	to smile
tawa	tertawa	to laugh

**LATIHAN 1**

Write a caption in Indonesian for each of the following pictures using the intransitive verbs listed in the preceding tables.





**Note**

Some intransitive verbs can take either the **ber-** or the **meN-** prefix with no difference in meaning.

<b>bernyanyi/menyanyi</b>	to sing
<b>berbekas/membekas</b>	to leave a mark or trace

Some other intransitive verbs take what are sometimes called *pseudo-objects* (nouns that look like objects, but are not perceived as being affected by the action)—see section 9.2.

<b>bermain gitar</b>	to play the guitar
<b>bertepuk tangan</b>	to clap (one's) hands
<b>bersepatu roda</b>	to roller-skate

In these cases, we treat the verb and the following word as constituting one activity. In the previous examples, the words **gitar**, **tangan** and **roda** are considered as part of the verbs **bermain**, **bertepuk** and **bersepatu** respectively.

## Transitive verbs

A *transitive* verb requires more than one noun or noun phrase for it to occur in a sentence. One of the nouns or noun phrases serves as the subject (as in intransitive verbs), while the other noun or noun phrase serves as *object*. Because the subject is typically the instigator of an action, we also refer to it as the *actor*. The object, on the other hand, is the person or thing that is affected by that action. We also refer to it as the *patient*.

SUBJECT (ACTOR)	TRANSITIVE VERB	OBJECT (PATIENT)
<b>Kakak</b> Older sibling	<b>membaca</b> reads	<b>surat.</b> the letter.
<b>Ibu</b> Mother	<b>membawa</b> carries	<b>keranjang.</b> the basket.
<b>Pak Harun</b> Mr Harun	<b>membuka</b> opens	<b>pintu.</b> the door.



Many transitive verbs have the meN- prefix.

BASE WORD	TRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
ajak	mengajak	to invite someone to do something
ajar	mengajar	to teach
angkat	mengangkat	to lift
antar	mengantar	to take someone/something somewhere
atur	mengatur	to arrange, organise
baca	membaca	to read
bahas	membahas	to discuss
bakar	membakar	to burn
bantah	membantah	to deny
bawa	membawa	to carry
bayar	membayar	to pay
bela	membela	to defend
beri	memberi	to give
beritahu	memberitahu	to inform
buka	membuka	to open
cari	mencari	to search, look for
cuci	mencuci	to wash
culik	menculik	to kidnap
curi	mencuri	to steal
daki	mendaki	to climb (a mountain)
dapat	mendapat	to get, obtain, gain
dukung	mendukung	to support
gali	menggali	to dig
ganggu	mengganggu	to disturb
ganti	mengganti	to replace
hias	menghias	to decorate
intip	mengintip	to peep
isi	mengisi	to fill
jaga	menjaga	to take care
jahit	menjahit	to sew
jawab	menjawab	to reply
jemput	menjemput	to pick someone up
jual	menjual	to sell
lihat	melihat	to see, look
masak	memasak	to cook
mulai	memulai	to begin
pakai	memakai	to wear, use
panggil	memanggil	to call, summon
panjat	memanjat	to climb (a tree)

BASE WORD	TRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
pasang	memasang	to set up, install
periksa	memeriksa	to check, inspect
pesan	memesan	to order
pilih	memilih	to choose
pinang	meminang	to propose (marriage)
pinta	meminta	to ask for something, request
rusak	merusak	to damage intentionally
salin	menyalin	to copy
sapu	menyapu	to sweep (floor, yard)
sewa	menyewa	to rent
simpan	menyimpan	to store, keep
siram	menyiram	to water, spray
tangkap	menangkap	to catch
tarik	menarik	to pull
tawar	menawar	to bargain
telpon	menelpon	to telephone
tonton	menonton	to watch
tunggu	menunggu	to wait
tunjuk	menunjuk	to point, choose
tutup	menutup	to close
ulang	mengulang	to repeat
undang	mengundang	to invite (for example, to a party)
urus	mengurus	to organise



**Note**

Many of the transitive verbs listed in the table above can also function as intransitive verbs when they are used without an object. **Memberi** (to give) is a good example.

Intransitive:

**Dia suka memberi.**  
He/she likes giving.

Transitive:

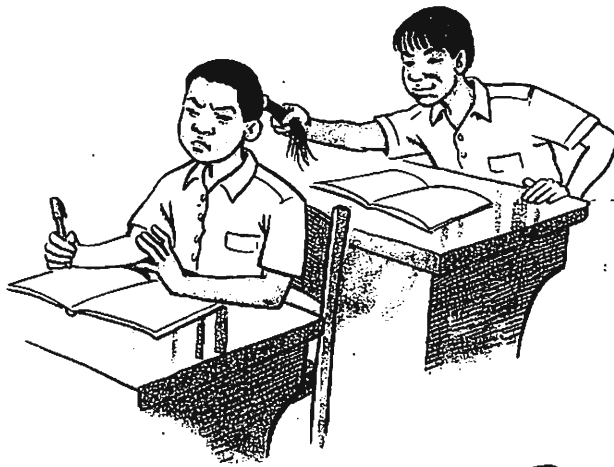
**Dia suka memberi uang.**  
He/she likes giving out money.



**LATIHAN 2**

The following pictures illustrate people doing things. Write a caption in Indonesian for each picture using a transitive verb.

ge)  
g, request  
nally  
-d)



ple, to a party)

1 also  
ut an

e a caption in

## Deriving transitive from the intransitive

As we have seen, what distinguishes an intransitive verb from a transitive verb is primarily the number of noun or noun phrases that occur with it in a sentence. Often, however, we find that an intransitive verb can be transformed into a transitive verb using certain mechanisms. Ways in which we can do this are discussed below.

### Adding an object

The verb *membaca* (to read) can be used as an intransitive verb or as a transitive verb without changing its form. It is the addition of an object that makes it transitive.

SUBJECT	INTRANSITIVE VERB
Mereka They	<i>membaca.</i> read.
Ibu Mother	<i>makan.</i> eats.

SUBJECT	TRANSITIVE VERB	OBJECT
<b>Mereka</b> They	<b>membaca</b> read	<b>buku.</b> a book.
<b>Ibu</b> Mother	<b>makan</b> eats	<b>bakmi goreng.</b> fried noodles.

### Adding the suffix *-kan* or *-i*

Some intransitive verbs can be transformed into transitive verbs by either changing the affixation from *ber-* to *meN-kan* or *meN-i* or by adding some affixes when there are none. When we do this, the meaning of the verbs sometimes stays the same and sometimes changes.

SUBJECT	INTRANSITIVE VERB	PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE
<b>Dia</b> He/she	<b>berbicara</b> talks	<b>di kelas.</b> in class.
<b>Mira</b> Mira	<b>bertemu</b> meets	<b>dengan dia.</b> with him/her.

SUBJECT	TRANSITIVE VERB	OBJECT	PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE
<b>Dia</b> He/she	<b>membicarakan</b> talks about (discusses)	<b>hal itu</b> that matter	<b>di kelas.</b> in class.
<b>Ali</b> Ali	<b>menemui</b> came to see	<b>saya</b> me	<b>di rumah.</b> at home.



#### Note

Here is how you can tell whether the verb in a sentence is transitive or intransitive. Intransitive verbs can be followed directly by a preposition (such as *di* or *dengan*). Transitive verbs must be followed directly by an object; there cannot be a preposition intercepting between the verb and the object.

Notice the transformation below from intransitive (verb + preposition) to transitive (verb with *meN-* prefix and either suffix *-kan* or *-i*).

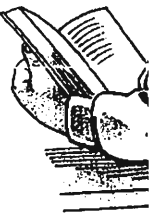
Intransitive: Rita cinta kepada Faisal.  
Rita loves Faisal. (Literally 'loves to')

Transitive: Rita mencintai Faisal.  
Rita loves Faisal.

Intransitive: Saya suka akan film itu.  
I like that film. (Literally 'like at')

Transitive: Saya menyukai film itu.  
I like that film.

Intransitive: Andi marah kepada temannya.  
Andi is angry with his friend.



Transitive: Andi memarahi temannya.  
Andi scolded his friend.

Intransitive: Mereka berkumpul di aula.  
They gathered in the hall.

Transitive: Guru mengumpulkan murid-murid di aula.  
The teacher gathered the students in the hall.



### LATIHAN 3

The pictures below illustrate people doing something. Write a caption in Indonesian for each picture using an intransitive verb. Next, rewrite the captions, transforming each intransitive verb into a transitive verb by adding an object.



### LATIHAN 4

The following verbs are from the tables of transitive and intransitive verbs that you saw earlier in this chapter. Copy and complete the following table to make sentences. The left-hand column is for the subject of the sentence, while the other columns are for the object (if there is one), the prepositional phrase (indicating location) and for any other information that you wish to add to the sentence.

SUBJECT	VERB	OBJECT	PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE	OTHER INFORMATION
1	makan			
2	membaca			
3	menjahit			
4	pindah			
5	berlibur			
6	mencuri			
7	berbelanja			
8	menjemput			
9	menyewa			
10	membela			



## LATIHAN 5

Work in pairs to do this exercise.

- Person A: Act out five verbs from the verb tables in this chapter and ask your friend: **Saya sedang apa?** (What am I doing?)
- Person B: Answer the question in a sentence beginning with: **Kamu sedang ...** (You are ...)

You need to identify whether the verb required is intransitive or transitive. If the verb is intransitive, you can add a prepositional phrase or something else. If the verb is transitive, you need to add an object, followed by some other information if you wish.

Examples:

**A:** **Saya sedang apa?**

**B:** **Kamu sedang merokok.**

**A:** **Saya sedang apa?**

**B:** **Kamu sedang tidur di meja.**

Take turns in asking and answering questions.

## Summary

- Intransitive verbs take a subject but no object → [Subject – Verb].
- Transitive verbs take a subject and an object → [Subject – Verb – Object].
- Forms of intransitive verbs: affix-less, [**ber-** + base word], [**meN-** + base word].
- Forms of transitive verbs: [**meN-** + base word], [**meN-** + **-kan**], [**meN-** + **-i**].
- Only intransitive verbs can be followed directly by a preposition, such as **di**, **ke**, **dengan** or **akan**. Transitive verbs have to be followed directly by an object.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

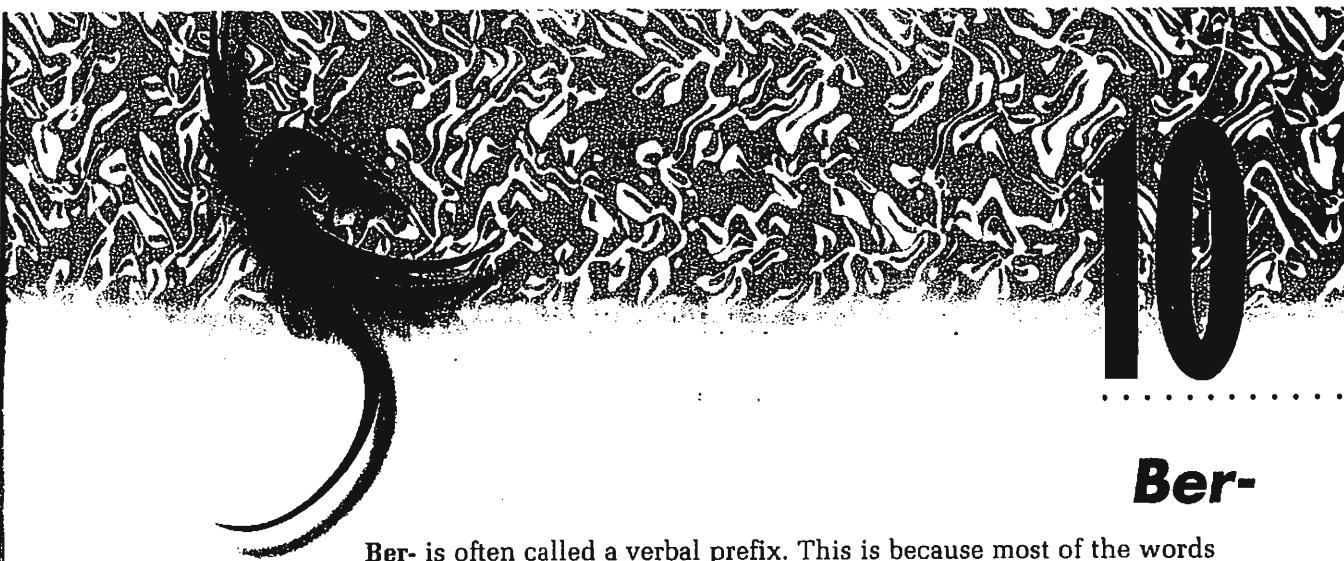
\_\_\_\_\_

s chapter  
(g?)  
with: **Kamu**

ve or  
ional phrase  
an object,

].  
- Object].  
- + base

[meN- + -i].  
such as **di**,  
ly by an



# Ber-

**Ber-** is often called a verbal prefix. This is because most of the words with this prefix are verbs, even though they may be derived from nouns, verbs or other sources. We saw in Chapter 9 that **ber-** verbs are intransitive; that is, they occur with only one noun (or noun phrase) in a sentence and this noun is the subject of the sentence.

In this chapter we look at the different meanings of **ber-** words:

- **Ber-** verbs and not verbs
- **Ber-an**

## To have what the base word indicates

**Ber-** in this group roughly means 'to have'. However, when we translate it into English, we may use the ending '-ed', or use 'of' or 'have'.

- berkaki empat**      four-legged
- berumur lima tahun**      be five years of age
- berkumis**      have a moustache

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
anak	child	beranak	to have a child
jenggot	beard	berjenggot	to have a beard
kaki	foot	berkaki	to have feet
kulit	skin	berkulit	to have skin
kumis	moustache	berkumis	to have a moustache
nama	name	bernama	to have the name (be called)
rambut	hair	berambut	to have hair
uang	money	beruang	to have money (be wealthy)
umur	age	berumur	to have age (be a certain age)



### Did you know?

The word **beruang** can mean three different things, depending on the base word from which it is derived.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
uang	money	ber + uang	to have money (be wealthy)
ruang	room	be(r) + ruang	to have room (house, building)
beruang	bear (animal)	beruang	bear (the animal)

## To use or wear

This group includes words pertaining to things we wear (items of clothing) or use (including some vehicles, such as cars and bikes).

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
baju	shirt, attire	berbaju	to wear (attire)
jins	jeans	berjins	to wear jeans
kacamata	glasses	berkacamata	to wear glasses
mobil	car	bermobil	to go by car
sepatu	shoe	bersepatu	to wear shoes
sepeda	bicycle	bersepeda	to go by bicycle
sepeda motor	motorbike	bersepeda motor	to go by motorbike
singlet	singlet	bersinglet	to wear a singlet
tongkat	walking stick	bertongkat	to use a walking stick
topi	hat	bertopi	to wear a hat



## LATIHAN 1

Complete the following sentences with **ber-** words.

- 1 Benarkah bahwa orang Indonesia \_\_\_\_\_ coklat?
- 2 Ibu saya \_\_\_\_\_ 41 tahun.
- 3 Kami \_\_\_\_\_ ke Canberra.
- 4 Mereka keluarga yang \_\_\_\_\_ Rumah mereka besar sekali dan mobil mereka mewah.
- 5 Lina sangat suka \_\_\_\_\_ Levi's ke mana-mana.

### KOSAKATA

**mewah** luxurious, very expensive



## LATIHAN 2

Write a short caption in Indonesian for each of the following pictures using **ber-** words. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.





## To do what the base word indicates

The following verbs represent only a few of the ber- verbs. For more examples, refer to Chapter 9.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
cerita	story	bercerita	to tell a story
cermin	mirror	bercermin	to look at oneself in the mirror
gerak	motion	bergerak	to move
latih	exercise, train	berlatih	to train (physical exercise), to do exercise (not physical, such as music, maths)
libur	holiday	berlibur	to take a vacation
perang	war	berperang	to engage in a war
siul	whistle	bersiul	to whistle
tambah	add, increase	bertambah	to increase
tandang	visit	bertandang	to visit
temu	meet	bertemu	to meet
tugas	task, duty	bertugas	to have a task/duty



### Note

#### Formal and informal forms

Sometimes words with the ber- prefix have the same meaning as those that do not have the ber- prefix. When speaking, Indonesians use either word. Words with the ber- prefix are more formal and this is the correct form to use when you write in Indonesian.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
belanja	to shop	berbelanja	to shop
dagang	to do business, sell	berdagang	to do business, sell
kumpul	to gather	berkumpul	to gather
main	to play	bermain	to play
nyanyi	to sing	bernyanyi	to sing

### Spelling

When attached to certain base words, the 'r' in *ber-* is either replaced by another letter or, if the base word begins with 'r', it is dropped altogether. Throughout the rest of this chapter, an asterisk (\*) is used to indicate words to which the spelling change applies.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
ajar	to teach	*belajar	to learn, study
kerja	to work	*bekerja	to work
renang	to swim	*berenang	to swim
runding	to negotiate	*berunding	to negotiate

### Ber- + numeral

When attached to a numeral, *ber-* means 'in + number'.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
lima	five	berlima	group of five people (Literally: in five)
dua	two	berdua	two people together (Literally: in two)

However, note the following.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
satu	one	bersatu	to unite (to be one)

### Ber-an

When the suffix *-an* is attached to a *ber-* verb, the verb will indicate either 'reciprocity' or 'irregularity of action or motion'.

## Reciprocity

'Reciprocity' means that the verbs indicate mutual action or relationship between two or more people, animals or inanimate objects (for example, vehicles).

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
bentur	to knock, hit	berbenturan	to knock or hit each other
cium	to kiss	berciuman	to be kissing (two people)
dekat	near	berdekatan	to be in close proximity to each other
dua	two	berduaan	to be alone with a partner (Literally: in two)
hadap	face	berhadapan	to face each other
jabat	to shake hand	berjabat (tangan)	to shake hands
jauh	far	berjauhan	to be distant from each other
kenal	to know	berkenalan	to introduce oneself to someone
musuh	enemy	bermusuhan	to be each other's enemy
pandang	gaze, look	berpandangan	to gaze/look at each other
papas	to come across	berpapasan	to meet or bump into someone
pegang	to hold	berpegangan (tangan)	to hold hands
sebelah	side	bersebelahan	to be side by side
seberang	across	berseberangan	to be across from each other
tabrak	to hit, collide	bertabrakan	to collide

## Irregular action or motion

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
datang	to come	berdatangan	to arrive one after another
kejar	to chase	berkejaran	to chase each other
lari	to run	berlarian	to run everywhere (to and fro)
tebar	to scatter	bertebaran	to be scattered
terbang	to fly	*beterbangan	to fly everywhere

Waktu berkenalan, orang Indonesia biasanya berjabat tangan.  
When introducing themselves, Indonesians usually shake hands.

Mobil itu bertabrakan dengan truk.  
That car collided with a truck.

Tamu-tamu mulai berdatangan ke pesta itu.  
Guests are starting to arrive at that party.



### LATIHAN 3

Working in pairs, choose one of the following sentences to act out in front of the class. The other students in the class have to guess what you are doing without looking at the **ber-** verbs on the previous page. Include some conversation, if need be, to enable the class to guess, rather than just miming.

- 1 Anda berdua berdiri **berseberangan** kemudian **berpandangan**.
- 2 Anda berdua duduk **berjauhan** di kelas karena anda **bermusuhan**.
- 3 Anda berdua baru **berkenalan**, dan setelah berbicara beberapa menit, anda mengetahui bahwa ternyata anda **bertetangga**.
- 4 Ketika mobil dan sepeda motor anda **bertabrakan**, orang-orang **berdatangan** untuk melihat apa yang terjadi.
- 5 Anda berdua **berpapasan** di jalan, lalu **berjabat** tangan karena sudah lama tidak bertemu.

### 106 Reduplicated **ber-**

When **ber-** is reduplicated, the word may indicate repeated or extended action, or action that takes place over an extended period of time. Reduplicated **ber-** may also indicate plural.

#### Repeated or extended action, or action over an extended time

REDUPLICATED BER- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
berbincang-bincang	to talk, discuss
bercakap-cakap	to talk, chat
berjalan-jalan	to walk at leisure, stroll
berjingkrak-jingkrak	to jump up and down in excitement
berputar-putar	to go round and round



#### Handy expression

A useful common expression is **berlama-lama** (purposely take time in doing something).

Jangan **berlama-lama** di sana ya.  
Don't stay too long there, will you?

Lisa **berlama-lama** mandi karena airnya hangat.  
Lisa is taking her time showering since the water is warm.

## Plural

REDUPLICATED BER- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
berbeda-beda	different kinds
bermacam-macam	various kinds
*beratus-ratus	hundreds of
*beribu-ribu	thousands of



### LATIHAN 4

Describe one of the following animals in Indonesian using **ber-** verbs. You should describe the animal's skin colour, eyes, mouth, teeth, whether it is two-legged or four-legged and so on. The other students in the class have to guess what animal it is.

- 1 **burung flamingo** (flamingo)
- 2 **ikan hiu** (shark)
- 3 **kodok/katak** (frog)
- 4 **kuda nil** (hippopotamus)
- 5 **kuda zebra** (zebra)
- 6 **kura-kura** (turtle)



### LATIHAN 5

On 28 October 1928, during the Youth Congress, the Indonesian Youth made a pledge that became known as **Sumpah Pemuda** (Youth Pledge). This pledge is a formal declaration of the existence of the Indonesian nation and the adoption of a national language (originally Malay). **Hari Sumpah Pemuda** (Youth Pledge Day) is annually commemorated on 28 October as a remembrance of this occasion.

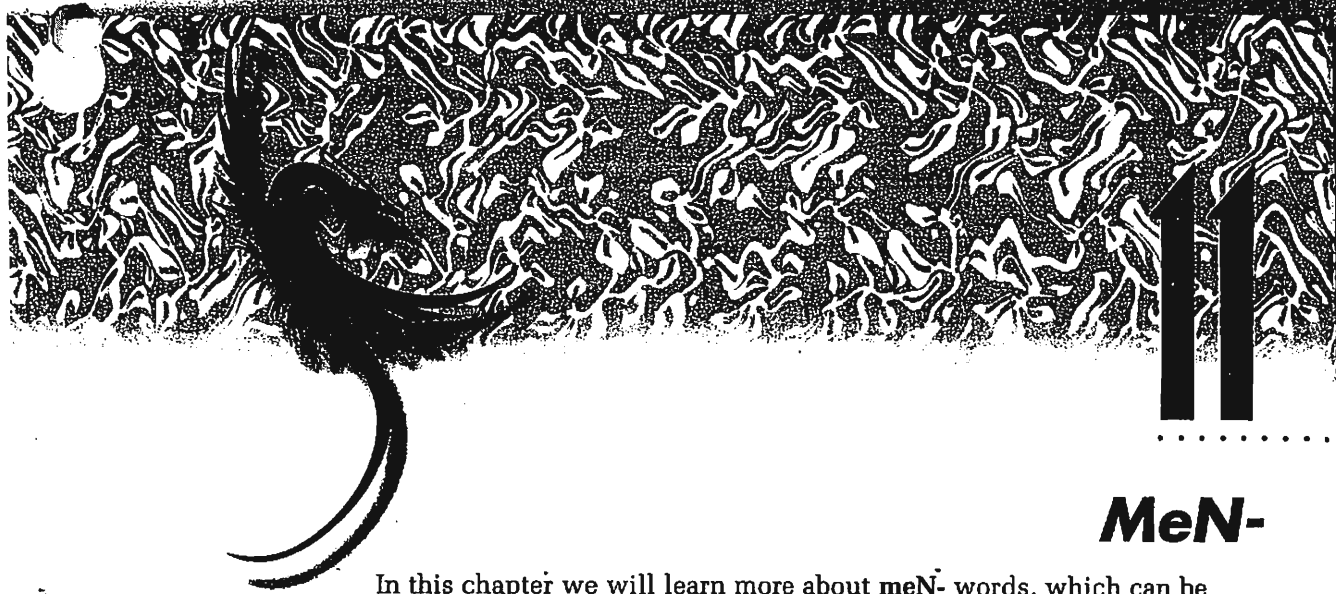
Translate the pledge into English.

#### Sumpah Pemuda

Kami, putra-putri Indonesia mengaku:  
Bertanah air satu, Tanah Air Indonesia  
Berbangsa satu, Bangsa Indonesia  
Berbahasa satu, Bahasa Indonesia

### Summary

- **Ber-** can mean to have, to use or wear, or to do what the base word indicates.
- **Ber-** + numeral means 'in + number'.
- **Ber-an** indicates reciprocity or irregularity of action or motion.
- Reduplicated **ber-** indicates repeated action or action over an extended time, or plural.



## MeN-

In this chapter we will learn more about **meN-** words, which can be verbs or adjectives.

We saw in Chapter 9 that **meN-** verbs can be either transitive (with an object following the verb) or intransitive (with no object following the verb).

Transitive:

<b>Mereka</b>	<b>membeli</b>	<b>pakaian</b>	<b>di toko murah itu.</b>
<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>Prepositional phrase</i>
They	bought	clothes	in that cheap shop.

Intransitive:

<b>Anita</b>	<b>menyanyi</b>	<b>di kamar mandi.</b>
<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Prepositional phrase</i>
Anita	sang	in the bathroom.

### Sound changes

When we affix **meN-** to a base word, often a sound change occurs; that is, the sound of the initial letter of the base word is changed. If the base word begins with certain letters, there is no change. The capital letter **N** in **meN-** is used to indicate this change.

INITIAL LETTER OF BASE WORD	EXAMPLE OF BASE WORD	PREFIX	EXAMPLE OF MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
l	lihat	me-	melihat	to see, look
m	maki		memaki	to swear
n	nanti		menanti	to wait
ng	nganga		menganga	to be agape
ny	nyanyi		menyanyi	to sing
r	raba		meraba	to touch, feel
y	yakin		meyakinkan	to convince
w	warna		mewarnai	to colour

INITIAL LETTER OF BASE WORD	EXAMPLE OF BASE WORD	PREFIX	EXAMPLE OF MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
b	bisu	mem-	membisu	to stay mute
f	fitnah		memfitnah	to slander
v	vonis		memvonis	to sentence
*p	pukul		memukul	to hit
d	dengkur	men-	mendengkur	to snore
j	jajah		menjajah	to colonise
c	cari		mencari	to look for
*t	tari		menari	to dance
a	atur	meng-	mengatur	to organise
e	erang		mengerang	to moan
i	ikat		mengikat	to tie
o	obrol		mengobrol	to chat
u	ukur		mengukur	to measure
g	garuk		menggaruk	to scratch
h	hukum		menghukum	to punish
*k	kejar		mengejar	to chase
*s	setir	meny-	menyetir	to drive



#### Note

Initial sounds indicated by an asterisk (\*) in the above are dropped when prefixed by meN-.



## LATIHAN 1

Form meN- words by applying the above rules to each of the following base words. Then find the meaning in English of each meN- word by consulting your dictionary.

BASE WORD	MEN- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
1 kira		
2 masak		
3 potong		
4 rusak		
5 buka		
6 gambar		
7 tulis		
8 bawa		
9 sesal		
10 hafal		
11 gapai		
12 lotot		

BASE WORD	MeN- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
13	kepit	
14	umpat	
15	ambil	
16	ekor	
17	nebeng	
18	cium	
19	tolak	
20	usap	



## LATIHAN 2

Working in pairs, take turns to do the following.

- 1 Practise pronouncing the base words and the meN- words from Latihan 1.
- 2 Act out each of the verbs while your partner guesses the meaning.

### Transitive meN- verbs

In transitive verbs, meN- indicates *active voice* (also called *subject-focus*). That is, it tells us that the focus of the sentence is on the actor, who is also the subject of the sentence.

MeN- contrasts with the di- prefix in that di- indicates *passive voice* (also called *object-focus*), where the focus is on the object of the sentence. This contrast is discussed in more detail in Chapter 19.

#### MeN- verbs with noun base

Some transitive meN- verbs come from nouns. The following verbs mean 'do something associated with the base word' or 'using what is indicated by the base word'.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MeN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
borgol	handcuff	memborgol	to handcuff
cat	paint	mencat,	to paint (for example,
		mengecat	the wall)
parut	grater	memarut	to grate
sapu	broom	menyapu	to sweep (for example, shoes,
			hair, but not furniture)
semir	polish	menyemir	to polish
sisir	comb	menyisir	to comb

#### MeN- verbs with verbal base

Other meN- verbs have a verbal base and, as mentioned in Chapter 10, the presence of the prefix is required to make a well-formed verb.



BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
baca	to read	membaca	to read
buka	to open	membuka	to open
lihat	to look, see	melihat	to look, see
siram	to spray, water	menyiram	to spray, water (for example, the garden)
tutup	to close, shut	menutup	to close, shut

## Intransitive meN- verbs

With intransitive verbs, the prefix meN- indicates different meanings.

### Formation of base word

As with transitive verbs, the meN- prefix is needed in some intransitive verbs for the base word to be well formed or make sense. In some cases, the base word cannot occur without it.

BASE WORD	MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
didih	mendidih	to boil
erti	mengerti	to understand
inap	menginap	to stay the night (for example, at a friend's house or at a hotel)
ungsi	mengungsi	to flee (for example, as refugees)

### To do something associated with the base word

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
ludah	spit	meludah	to spit
rokok	cigarette	merokok	to smoke
susu	milk	menyusu	to suckle

### To be like what the base word indicates

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
gunung	mountain	menggunung	to pile up
puncak	peak	memuncak	to peak, culminate

## To go to where the base word indicates

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
darat	land	mendarat	to go to land, to land
dekat	near	mendekat	to move close
jauh	far	menjauh	to move away
seberang	across	menyeberang	to go to the other side, to cross

## Sound words (onomatopoeia)

These are words that resemble the noise made by either animals or humans.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
aum	roar	mengaum	to roar (for example, tigers)
cicit	squeak	mencicit	to squeak (for example, mice)
dengkur	snore	mendengkur	to snore
embik	bleat	mengembik	to bleat
eong	miaow	mengeong	to miaow
gonggong	bark	menggonggong	to bark
keluh	sigh	mengeluh	to sigh, complain
raung	roar, wail	meraung	to roar, wail
ringkik	neigh	meringkik	to neigh

## To become what the base word indicates

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
bengkak	swollen	membengkak	to swell
busuk	rotten	membusuk	to rot, go off (for example, food)
cair	liquid	mencair	to melt
kering	dry	mengering	to dry up
kuning	yellow	menguning	to become yellow → ripen (for example, rice plants)
putih	white	memutih	to become white → greying (for example, hair)
tebal	thick	menebal	to thicken
tipis	thin	menipis	to thin out

Some words having this meaning can also be used in a metaphorical sense.

### KOSAKATA

danau le  
darah b  
dinding w  
mendapatkan te  
o  
tetangga n

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
runcing	pointy	meruncing	to become pointy → become heated or acute (for example, conflict or argument)

## MeN- adjectives

Interestingly, some meN- words are adjectives rather than verbs. For example, the following meN- words mean 'in the shape indicated by the base word'.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN- ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
lingkar	circle	melingkar	curled
panjang	long	memanjang	lengthwise, elongated

Another example is the word menarik, which comes from the verb tarik (pull). The meaning of the adjective menarik is derived from the metaphorical sense of 'pull'; something that pulls or attracts your attention is something interesting or attractive.

menarik (verb)	to pull
menarik (adjective)	interesting, attractive

## Undifferentiated meN- and ber- verbs

In very few cases, meN- verbs mean the same as their corresponding ber- verbs.

MEN- VERB	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
membekas	berbekas	to leave a mark or trace
menyanyi	bernyanyi	to sing



### KOSAKATA

danau	lake
darah	blood
dinding	wall
mendapatkan	to get, obtain
tetangga	neighbour

## LATIHAN 3

Indicate whether the following sentences are transitive or intransitive. The verbs to which you should pay attention are underlined.

- 1 Polisi memborgol tangan pencuri itu.
- 2 Bibi saya mengeluh tentang suaminya setiap hari.
- 3 Anjing tetangga saya selalu menggonggong pada malam hari.
- 4 Kami membantu memarut kelapa di dapur.
- 5 Pada musim panas danau itu mengering.

- 6 Presiden itu menginap di hotel bintang lima.
- 7 Darahnya mendidih ketika mendengar berita itu.
- 8 Ketika melihat saya dia menjauh.
- 9 Kakak saya mencat dinding kamarnya kemarin.
- 10 Mereka menyemir sepatu untuk mendapatkan uang.



## LATIHAN 4

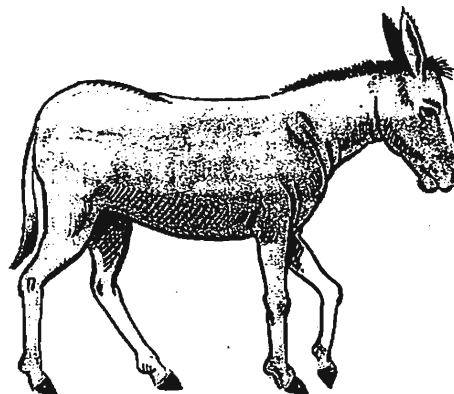
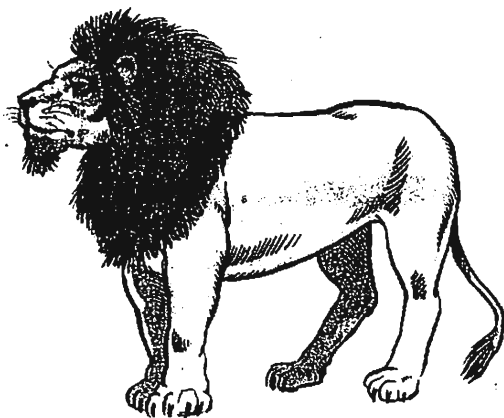
Write the following sentences in Indonesian. You will find the underlined words in this chapter. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

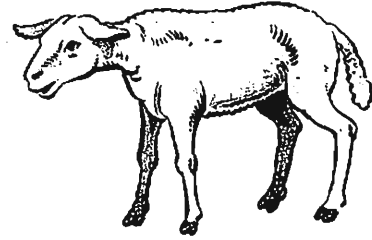
- 1 The snake curled up on the tree.
- 2 My mother's story is very interesting.
- 3 The food is starting to go off.
- 4 My father's hair is greying.
- 5 Goats and sheep bleat.
- 6 My friend smokes clove cigarettes from Indonesia.
- 7 The plane landed in Jakarta at 10.30 a.m.
- 8 They fled to a safer place.
- 9 She combs her daughter's hair every morning.
- 10 I don't understand the question.



## LATIHAN 5

Here are some pictures of animals. Find meN- verbs to describe their sounds.





---

## Summary

- **MeN-** verbs can be transitive or intransitive.
- **MeN-** verbs can have a noun base or a verbal base.
- In many cases, the **meN-** prefix is required for the base word to be well-formed or to make sense; in some cases, the base word cannot occur by itself.
- Some **meN-** words are adjectives rather than verbs.
- A few **meN-** verbs mean the same as their corresponding **ber-** verbs.

# 12

## MeN-kan

The suffix **-kan** is often attached to **meN-** words to make them transitive. Of course, we can also have transitive verbs without the suffix **-kan**, as we saw in the previous chapters. When a prefix and a suffix are attached to the same base word, we call it a *circumfix*.

**MeN-kan** words are primarily verbs; a few are adjectives. They can be grouped according to the meaning that the affixation gives to the base word.

### Indicating the transitive

In many cases, **meN-kan** merely indicates that the verbs are transitive. The affixation gives no other meaning except that its presence is required to make the verb well formed. For example, the verb **melakukan** (do, carry out or commit something) cannot occur without the prefix **meN-** and the suffix **-kan**. Similarly, the verb **menganjurkan** (suggest, advise) must have the affixes to make sense at all; **anjur** does not make sense by itself.

Other examples of **-kan** transitive verbs are listed below.

<b>-KAN VERB</b>	<b>ENGLISH MEANING</b>
<b>membandingkan</b>	to compare
<b>membayangkan</b>	to imagine
<b>membicarakan</b>	to talk about, discuss
<b>memikirkan</b>	to think about
<b>mendengarkan</b>	to listen to
<b>menerangkan</b>	to explain
<b>menerjemahkan</b>	to translate
<b>mengabaikan</b>	to ignore
<b>mengadakan</b>	to do, hold an event (for example, a party, meeting)
<b>mengatakan</b>	to say
<b>mengenakan</b>	to wear
<b>mengerjakan</b>	to do (for example, homework)
<b>menjelekkan</b>	to say bad things about someone
<b>menyalahkan</b>	to accuse someone of wrongdoing



### Note

Sometimes we find two **meN-** verbs with the same base, but one has **-kan** while the other does not, and both are transitive. In these cases, the verbs have different meanings.

MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-KAN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>meminjam</b>	to borrow	<b>meminjamkan</b>	to lend
<b>mendengar</b>	to hear	<b>mendengarkan</b>	to listen to
<b>menyewa</b>	to rent, hire	<b>menyewakan</b>	to rent to someone

## Causative

The second meaning of **meN-kan** is causative; that is, to cause something to be or become what the base word indicates. For example, the verb **membersihkan** comes from the base word **bersih** (clean). The verb can be translated literally as 'cause to become clean', but idiomatically as 'to clean'. Here are some other examples of causative **meN-kan** verbs. (Remember that all of these verbs are transitive.)

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-KAN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>besar</b>	big, large	<b>membesarkan</b>	to enlarge
<b>dingin</b>	cold	<b>mendinginkan</b>	to chill or cool something down
<b>duduk</b>	sit	<b>mendudukkan</b>	to seat someone
<b>halus</b>	smooth	<b>menghaluskan</b>	to make smooth
<b>hidup</b>	live, alive	<b>menghidupkan</b>	to turn on (example, light, television, car, stereo)
<b>hijau</b>	green	<b>menghijaukan</b>	to revegetate
<b>jatuh</b>	fall, drop	<b>menjatuhkan</b>	to drop something
<b>kecil</b>	small	<b>mengecilkan</b>	to turn down (for example, volume), alter something to become small (for example, pants, dress)
<b>keluar</b>	come/go out	<b>mengeluarkan</b>	to send or take somebody/something out (for example, of a bag or room), expel
<b>masuk</b>	go in, enter	<b>memasukkan</b>	to put into
<b>mati</b>	die, dead	<b>mematikan</b>	to turn off (for example, light, television, car, stereo)
<b>panas</b>	hot	<b>memanaskan</b>	to heat something up
<b>rapi</b>	neat, organised	<b>merapikan</b>	to tidy up (for example, bed, books)
<b>sederhana</b>	simple	<b>menyederhanakan</b>	to simplify
<b>terbang</b>	fly	<b>menerbangkan</b>	to fly something, to pilot
<b>tidur</b>	sleep	<b>menidurkan</b>	to put to sleep



## LATIHAN 1

Complete each of the following sentences by selecting an appropriate word from the box. Each word may be used only once.

### KOSAKATA

boneka	doll
desain	design
hutan	forest
mesin	engine
saku	pocket
sengaja	intentional
swasta	private, non-government

mengeluarkan	menidurkan
menghijaukan	mematikan
memasukkan	menyederhanakan
menghidupkan	menjatuhkan
merapikan	mendudukkan

- 1 Pak Budi \_\_\_\_\_ anaknya ke sekolah swasta di kota itu.
- 2 Pada jam 6 sore ibu \_\_\_\_\_ lampu di ruang tamu.
- 3 Tono sedang \_\_\_\_\_ tempat tidurnya.
- 4 Edi sedang \_\_\_\_\_ uang dari sakunya.
- 5 Bu Bejo akan \_\_\_\_\_ anaknya di kamar depan.
- 6 Ani \_\_\_\_\_ bonekanya di kursi rotan.
- 7 Dia dengan sengaja \_\_\_\_\_ botol kecap manis itu.
- 8 Kita harus \_\_\_\_\_ kembali hutan itu.
- 9 Mengapa dia tidak mau \_\_\_\_\_ mesin mobilnya?
- 10 Bisa anda \_\_\_\_\_ desain rumah itu?

## Benefactive

The third meaning of **meN-kan** is *benefactive*; that is, it indicates that the action shown by the verb is done for the benefit of someone else (who is called the *beneficiary*).

The benefactive **meN-kan** often occurs in a sentence with two objects. The first object, which directly follows the verb, is called the *primary object*, while the second is called the *secondary object*. In sentences with **meN-kan**, the beneficiary appears as the primary object. The secondary object is usually referred to as the *patient*. (Remember that this is a grammatical term and does not mean the same as a patient at a hospital.) The patient is the thing that is affected by the action (e.g. being given or transferred). To help you remember which one is which, here is a simple definition of each of these terms:

- *Primary object*: Object that directly follows the verb.
- *Secondary object*: Object that follows the primary object.
- *Beneficiary*: Person who benefits from the action indicated by the verb. In **meN-kan** sentences, this is the primary object.
- *Patient*: Thing being affected by the action. In **meN-kan** sentences, this is the secondary object.

<b>Ayah</b>	<b>membuatkan</b>	<b>kami</b>	<b>teh.</b>
Subject	Verb	Primary object	Secondary object
Agent		Beneficiary	Patient
Father	made	us	tea.



<b>Anna</b>	<b>membelikan</b>	<b>ibunya</b>	<b>jaket kulit.</b>
<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Primary object</i>	<i>Secondary object</i>
<i>Agent</i>		<i>Beneficiary</i>	<i>Patient</i>
Anna	bought	her mother	a leather jacket.

The sets of examples below should further clarify the benefactive use of **meN-kan**. Both sentences in each set are transitive, but only the **b** examples are benefactive.

- 1 a **Sita membuka pintu kamar.**  
Sita opened the bedroom door.
- b **Sita membukakan ibunya pintu kamar.**  
(Literally: Sita opened for her mother the door.)  
Sita opened the door for her mother.
- 2 a **John menulis surat kepada temannya.**  
John wrote a letter to his friend.
- b **John menuliskan saya surat.**  
(Literally: John wrote for me a letter.)  
John wrote a letter for me.
- 3 a **Rina membuat kue coklat.**  
Rina made a chocolate cake.
- b **Rina membuatkan ibu kue coklat.**  
(Literally: Rina made for mother a chocolate cake.)  
Rina made a chocolate cake for mother.

The benefactive **meN-kan** does not, however, always have two objects. When the beneficiary is known or assumed, often it is not mentioned. For example, in the following exchange, the beneficiary is B, but the word **kamu** is not mentioned. The suffix **-kan** already indicates that the action is done for someone else.

- A: Siapa yang membukakan pintu ketika kamu pulang tadi malam?**  
Who opened the door (for you) when you came home last night?
- B: Bapak.**  
Father.

Mentioning the beneficiary (hence mentioning **kamu** twice), as shown below, is often unnecessary.

**Siapa yang membukakan kamu pintu ketika kamu pulang tadi malam?**



## LATIHAN 2

The following are sets of verbs with the same base word. Write a sentence in Indonesian for each verb in the set: one simple transitive and the other benefactive, as shown above. For the benefactive sentences, you can choose to mention or not mention the beneficiary.

- 1 a **mengambil** (get)
- b **mengambilkan** (get for someone)
- 2 a **menutup** (close, shut)
- b **menutupkan** (close/shut for someone)

- 3 a membaca (read)  
b membacakan (read for someone)
- 4 a membeli (buy)  
b membelikan (buy for someone)
- 5 a memasak (cook)  
b memasakkan (cook for someone)
- 6 a membawa (bring)  
b membawakan (bring for someone)
- 7 a mencari (look for)  
b mencarikan (look for something for someone)
- 8 a mencuci (wash)  
b mencucikan (wash for someone)

### Optional -kan

In some cases, verbs with the suffix **-kan** mean the same as those without the suffix. The suffix does not lend any additional meaning to these verbs, so we can use either form. Some of these verbs are:

MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-KAN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
memberi	to give	memberikan	to give
mendapat	to get, obtain	mendapatkan	to get, obtain
mengantar	to take/accompany someone to a place	mengantarkan	to take/accompany someone to a place

**Kepala sekolah memberi(kan) penghargaan kepada murid itu.**  
The headmaster/headmistress gave an award to that student.

**Ayahnya mendapat(kan) pekerjaan di Bandung.**  
Her father got a job in Bandung.

**Mereka mengantar(kan) saya ke bandara.**  
They took me to the airport.

### Undifferentiated meN-kan and ber-

In very few cases, **meN-kan** verbs are used in the same way as **ber-**verbs; that is, intransitively. One example is:

MEN-KAN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
mengatakan	to say	berkata	to say

**Dia mengatakan/berkata bahwa dia akan datang ke pesta saya.**  
He/she said that he/she would come to my party.

## Contrast between *meN-kan* and *member-kan*

Some verbs suffixed by *-kan* that have the same base have different meanings, depending on whether they have the prefix *meN-* or the prefix *member-*.

MEN-KAN OR MEMBER-KAN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
melakukan	to do, carry out or commit something
memberlakukan	to put something into effect (for example, sanction, regulation)
memberhentikan	to sack someone
menghentikan	to stop something



### LATIHAN 3

Identify the meaning of *meN-kan* in the following sentences: simple transitive, causative or benefactive. Please note that sometimes a verb can be both simple transitive and causative, or both causative and benefactive.

- 1 Mereka sedang mengerjakan apa?
- 2 Ira akan memanaskan susu di dapur.
- 3 Di mana temanmu akan menghentikan mobilnya?
- 4 Siapa yang membelikanmu kalkulator itu?
- 5 Sekolah kami akan mengadakan pertandingan sepak bola.
- 6 Rudi sedang membacakan temannya lirik lagu itu.
- 7 Mengapa kamu belum membersihkan mejamu?
- 8 Saya tidak suka menerjemahkan kalimat dari bahasa Indonesia ke bahasa Inggris.
- 9 Sally tidak mau mengecilkan radionya.
- 10 Mereka sedang membicarakan masalah lingkungan di ruangan itu.
- 11 Dia mengatakan apa kepada anda?
- 12 Jangan menyalahkan saya kalau kamu tidak bisa ke bioskop.



### LATIHAN 4

Survey five people in your class to find out who does what at home. Write their names in the left column of a table like the one shown on the next page. For each subsequent column, you must ask each person 'Siapa yang ...?' and record his or her response in the appropriate space. Present your findings to the class.

NAMA	MEMBERSIHKAN	MENGEKLUARKAN	MERAPIKAN	MENGHIDUPKAN	MEMATIKAN
	KAMAR MANDI	KAMPASAMPAH	TEMPAT TIDUR	LAMPURUANG TAMU	TELEVISI
				PADA MALAM HARI	PADA MALAM HARI

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

## MeN-kan adjectives

Some **meN-kan** words can be adjectives as well as verbs. These are words primarily to do with emotion or state of mind.

BASE WORD	MEN-KAN WORD	ENGLISH MEANING AS VERB	ENGLISH MEANING AS ADJECTIVE
<b>bingung</b> confused	<b>membingungkan</b>	to confuse someone	confusing
<b>gembira</b> happy, pleased	<b>menggembirakan</b>	to make someone happy or pleased	pleasing
<b>jengkel</b> annoyed	<b>menjengkelkan</b>	to annoy someone	annoying
<b>kecewa</b> disappointed	<b>mengecewakan</b>	to disappoint someone	disappointing
<b>lega</b> relieved	<b>melegakan</b>	to make someone relieved	cause for relief
<b>prihatin</b> concerned	<b>memprihatinkan</b>	to make someone concerned	cause for concern, worrisome
<b>ragu</b> in doubt	<b>meragukan</b>	to doubt someone or something	cause for doubt
<b>sedih</b> sad	<b>menyedihkan</b>	to make someone sad, sadden	saddening, pitiful
<b>senang</b> glad	<b>menyenangkan</b>	to make someone glad	pleasing, exciting



### Note

A few **men-kan** words are either adjectives or verbs, not both.

- menggiurkan** (adjective only): enticing, tempting
- memarahkan** (causative verb only): to make someone angry, irritate

## KOSAKATA

batuk	co
bercanda	jo
bersedia	wi
kesulitan	pr
meludah	to
menyontek	to
	pe
	wi



## LATIHAN 5

Interview a classmate to find out about his or her likes and dislikes based on the following questions. First, translate these questions into Indonesian using 'Apa yang paling ... anda?'. Your classmate's answers should start with 'Yang paling ... saya adalah ...'.

- 1 What annoys you most?
- 2 What makes you happiest?
- 3 What confuses you most?
- 4 What concerns you most?
- 5 What saddens you most?



## LATIHAN 6

Below are some habits or traits that we often find in people. Find a **meN-**kan adjective to describe what you think of such habits or traits in people. Rate your opinion by adding some intensifying words in front of your adjectives, such as:

### KOSAKATA

batuk	cough
bercanda	joke around
bersedia	willing
kesulitan	problem
meludah	to spit
menyontek	to copy other people's work

tidak terlalu	not too ...
sedikit	a little ...
sangat	very ...

- 1 Rajin mencuci piring sesudah makan.
- 2 Batuk tanpa menutup mulut.
- 3 Meludah di mana-mana.
- 4 Tidak pernah mau mendengarkan orang lain.
- 5 Selalu tersenyum setiap kali anda bertemu dengannya.
- 6 Selalu bicara dengan suara keras.
- 7 Selalu bersedia menolong jika orang lain ada kesulitan.
- 8 Menyontek pekerjaan anda setiap kali ada tugas atau ujian.
- 9 Suka menjelekkkan anda kepada teman lain.
- 10 Suka bercanda jika bertemu dengan anda.



## LATIHAN 7

Write a simple caption in Indonesian for each of the following pictures using a **meN-**kan verb, then say whether that verb is a simple transitive, causative or benefactive.





---

## Summary

- **MeN-kan** words are primarily transitive verbs.
- They can have causative or benefactive meaning.
- Sometimes the suffix **-kan** is optional.
- In very few cases, **meN-kan** verbs mean the same as their corresponding **ber-** verbs.
- Verbs affixed with **meN-kan** have different meanings than those affixed with **member-kan**.
- Some **meN-kan** words are adjectives as well as verbs. A few **meN-kan** words are either adjectives or verbs, not both.



## MeN-i

Words with the circumfix **meN-i** are transitive verbs. Like other forms of affixation, **meN-i** gives different meanings when attached to the base word. In this chapter we look at some of these meanings.

Unlike **meN-kan** words, which include transitive verbs and adjectives, **meN-i** words are only transitive verbs. There are no **meN-i** adjectives.

The main point to remember about **meN-i** verbs is that the object that directly follows the verb is conceptualised as a static location; that is, the object does not change location. Some examples later in this chapter will clarify this further.

### Various meanings of *meN-i* verbs

#### To apply or take off

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-I VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
air	water	mengairi	to water (rice field, not garden)
gambar	picture	menggambari	to draw a picture on something
gula	sugar	menggulai	to sweeten
kulit	skin	menguliti	to skin something
minyak	oil	meminyaki	to oil
obat	medication	mengobati	to treat with medication
sisik	scale	menyisiki	to scale (for example, fish)
tandatangan	signature	menandatangani	to sign
warna	colour	mewarnai	to colour in

### To act in the manner of

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-I VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
baik	good	membbaiki	to be good to someone
bintang	star	membintangi	to star in a film
bohong	lie	membohongi	to deceive
dalang	puppeteer	mendalangi	to mastermind
guru	teacher	menggurui	to patronise
jahat	bad, evil	menjahati	to treat someone badly
juara	champion	menjuarai	to win (games)
kasih	love, affection	mengasihi	to love, have affection for
ketua	chairperson	mengetuai	to chair, head
musuh	enemy	memusuhi	to treat as enemy
raja	king	merajai	to rule over
sponsor	sponsor	mensponsori	to sponsor
sutradara	film director	menyutradarai	to direct (films)
wakil	representative	mewakili	to represent

### To cause something to become what is indicated by the base word

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-I VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
basah	wet	membasahi	to wet
kotor	dirty	mengotori	to dirty
kurang	less	mengurangi	to reduce
luka	wound	melukai	to hurt (physical or emotional)

### Repeated action

Some meN-i verbs indicate that the action is done repeatedly to one or more objects.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-I VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
ambil	get, take	mengambil	to get or take things
bakar	burn	membakari	to burn land or things
cium	kiss	menciumi	to kiss repeatedly
garuk	scratch	menggaruki	to scratch repeatedly
gigit	bite	menggigiti	to bite repeatedly
pukul	hit	memukuli	to hit repeatedly
tebang	fell (trees)	menebangi	to fell many trees





## Contrast between meN-i and meN-kan verbs

Some meN-i and meN-kan verbs with the same base word have different meanings depending on how the object (the primary object, if there are two objects in the sentence) is perceived or conceptualised. As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, the object in sentences with meN-i verbs is conceptualised as a static location; it does not change location. In contrast, the object in sentences with meN-kan verbs changes location; it moves from one place to another.

Notice below that in 1a the object (*saya*) is stationary, while in 1b the object (*radio itu*) changes location from where Bu Ratih had it before to a location closer to the table.

- |   |   |  |   |  |
|---|---|--|---|--|
| 1 | a | <b>Bu Ratih mendekati</b>  | <u>saya</u>                               | <b>siang tadi.</b>                                 |
|   |   | <i>Subject</i> <i>Verb</i><br>Bu Ratih    approached                       | <i>Object</i><br><u>me</u>                | <i>Adverb of time</i><br>this afternoon.           |
|   | b | <b>Bu Ratih mendekatkan</b>  | <u>radio itu</u>                          | <b>ke meja saya.</b>                               |
|   |   | <i>Subject</i> <i>Verb</i><br>Bu Ratih    brought                          | <i>Object</i><br><u>the radio</u>         | <i>Prepositional phrase</i><br>closer to my table. |
| 2 | a | <b>Ibu mengantari</b>  | <u>Bu Marni</u>                           | <b> kue.</b>                                       |
|   |   | <i>Subject</i> <i>Verb</i><br>Mother    brought                            | <i>Beneficiary</i><br><u>Bu Marni</u>     | <i>Patient</i><br>a cake.                          |
|   |   | → Bu Marni stays where she is.   |   |  |
|   | b | <b>Ibu mengantarkan</b>  | <u>kue</u>                                | <b> untuk Bu Marni.</b>                            |
|   |   | <i>Subject</i> <i>Verb</i><br>Mother    brought                            | <i>Patient</i><br><u>a cake</u>           | <i>Prepositional phrase</i><br>for Bu Marni.       |
|   |   | → The cake changes location from Mother's hands to Bu Marni's.             |   |  |
| 3 | a | <b>Ahmad menyirami</b>   | <u>kebunnya</u>                           | <b> setiap sore.</b>                               |
|   |   | <i>Subject</i> <i>Verb</i><br>Ahmad    waters                              | <i>Object</i><br><u>his garden</u>        | <i>Adverb of frequency</i><br>every afternoon.     |
|   |   | → The garden stays where it is.  |   |  |
|   | b | <b>Ahmad menyiramkan</b>   | <u>seember air</u>                        | <b> ke pohon itu.</b>                              |
|   |   | <i>Subject</i> <i>Verb</i><br>Ahmad    poured                              | <i>Object</i><br><u>a bucket of water</u> | <i>Prepositional phrase</i><br>on the tree.        |
|   |   | → The water changes location from the bucket in Ahmad's hands to the tree. |   |  |





## LATIHAN 1

### KOSAKATA (KATA DASAR = BASE WORD)

antar	to take something/someone somewhere
duduk	to sit
hadiah	gift
jauh	far
makam	grave
obat	medication
seberang	across
tabur	to sprinkle
tanam	to sow

### KOSAKATA LAIN (OTHER VOCABULARY)

boneka	doll
galak	ferocious
angkauan	to reach
sau	knife
ngai	river
tajam	sharp
ulang tahun	birthday
wol	wool

The following pairs of sentences contain **meN-i** and **meN-kan** verbs. Draw a simple picture to illustrate each sentence, showing whether the object remains stationary or changes location.

- a Saya akan pergi sebentar; jangan menduduki kursi saya ya.

b Adik mendudukan bonekanya di tempat tidur.
- a Mereka mengantari saya bunga kemarin.

b Pak Harsoyo mengantarkan anaknya ke dokter gigi.
- a Dia menjauhi anjing yang galak itu.

b Bapak menjauhkan pisau tajam itu dari jangkauan anaknya.
- a Mereka berenang menyeberangi sungai itu.

b Petugas menyeberangkan anak-anak sekolah setiap pagi.
- a Bu Rani menanami kebunnya dengan jagung.

b Bu Rani menanamkan biji jagung di kebunnya.
- a Kakak menghadiahi ibu topi wol untuk ulang tahunnya.

b Pak Diman menghadiahkan sepeda kepada anaknya.
- a Dokter mengobati pasien kanker itu.

b Mereka pergi mengobatan anaknya ke dokter.
- a Mereka menaburi makam neneknya dengan bunga.

b Mereka menaburkan bunga di makam neneknya.

## Undifferentiated meN-i and meN-kan

Sometimes Indonesian speakers do not differentiate between **meN-i** and **meN-kan**, which can be confusing for some learners. Fortunately, there are not too many cases where this occurs. Here are some examples.

MEN-I VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-KAN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
memanasi	to heat (for example, food, milk)	memanaskan	to heat (for example, food, milk)
memberati	to trouble or cause anxiety	memberatkan	to trouble or cause anxiety
memikiri	to think about	memikirkan	to think about
menamai	to name	menamakan	to name
mengingini	to want, desire	menginginkan	to want, desire
menyakiti	to hurt (feelings)	menyakitkan	to hurt (feelings)



## LATIHAN 2

Translate the following sentences with **meN-i** and **meN-kan** into English.

- 1 Tadi malam polisi mendatangi rumah kami.
- 2 Produser film itu mendatangkan aktor dari luar negeri.
- 3 Ibu saya sedih memikirkan adik saya yang tidak mau sekolah.
- 4 Dillah memasukkan uang itu ke dompetnya.
- 5 Para demonstran melemparkan batu ke kantor itu dengan marah.
- 6 Pencuri mulai mengambil barang-barang di rumah itu.
- 7 Siapa yang akan mengantarkan kamu ke sekolah besok?
- 8 Jane menangisi anjingnya yang mati.
- 9 Siapa yang meniduri tempat tidur itu tadi malam?
- 10 Bapak menaiki tangga itu pelan-pelan.

### Other meN-i and meN-kan contrasts

Some other **meN-i** and **meN-kan** words share the same base word but no obvious contrast in meaning, unlike those we saw in section 13.2. The best way to remember them might just be to learn them by heart.

#### MEN-I OR MEN-KAN VERB

#### ENGLISH MEANING

memperingati	to commemorate
memperingatkan	to warn, reprimand
mendahului	to overtake, to beat someone in something
mendahulukan	to put something or someone first
menyelamati	to congratulate
menyelamatkan	to save someone or something

### MeN-i and corresponding intransitive verbs

As discussed in Chapter 9, in some cases an intransitive verb can be transformed into a transitive verb by using **meN-** verbs suffixed either by **-i** or **-kan**. The meaning may be similar or it may change. Here are some examples with **meN-i**.

INTRANSITIVE VERB + PREPOSITION	ENGLISH MEANING	MEN-KAN TRANSITIVE VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
berdiam di	to live in	mendiami	to occupy, inhabit
bertemu dengan	to meet with	menemui	to go and see someone
duduk di	to sit on	menduduki	to occupy a position or territory
hadir di	to be present at, attend	menghadiri	to attend
marah kepada	to be angry with	memarahi	to be angry with, scold
masuk ke	to go into, enter	memasuki	to go into, enter
menikah dengan	to get married to	menikahi	to wed
percaya kepada	to believe in	mempercayai	to believe in, trust
sadar akan	to be aware of, conscious of	menyadari	to realise
suka akan/dengan	to like, be fond of	menyukai	to like, favour
tahu tentang	to know about	mengetahui	to know something



### LATIHAN 3

Translate the following sentences into Indonesian using either intransitive or transitive verbs with **meN-i**.

- 1 I don't believe in ghosts.
- 2 I realised that I was wrong.
- 3 They trusted me to buy the computer.
- 4 Ali went to see the headmistress.
- 5 He married a girl from Surabaya.
- 6 The Japanese occupied Indonesia from 1942 to 1945.
- 7 They know my weakness.
- 8 Twelve million people inhabit that territory.
- 9 Don't be angry with me.
- 10 They attended the protest last week.

#### KOSAKATA

hantu	ghost
kelemahan	weakness
kepala sekolah	head- mistress
protes	protest



### LATIHAN 4

Look at the following pictures, then write a simple caption for each one in Indonesian using either **meN-i** or **meN-kan** verbs.



## Summary

- Words with **meN-i** are transitive verbs.
- The object of **meN-i** verbs is conceptualised as a static location.
- The **meN-i** affixation gives different meanings to the base word.
- Contrast between **MeN-i** and **meN-kan** verbs:
  - Some are contrasted in meaning: the object in **meN-i** does not change location, while in **meN-kan** it does.
  - Some **meN-i** and **meN-kan** verbs are not differentiated in meaning, while some others are.
  - Some **meN-i** verbs have corresponding intransitive verbs. Some of them have similar meanings, while others are quite different.

# 14

## Ter-

Words prefixed by **ter-** fall into two main categories: adjectives and verbs. The adjectives are easier to remember because they have only one general meaning, while the verbs have several meanings.

### Adjective *ter-*

When **ter-** is affixed to adjectives, it indicates superlative, which in English is shown by the word 'most' (for example, 'most important', 'most expensive') or the ending '-est' (for example, 'smartest', 'easiest', 'coldest'). **Ter-** in this use can be substituted by the word **paling**, which means the same thing, as shown below.

TER- SUPERLATIVE	ENGLISH MEANING	PALING SUPERLATIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
terbaik	best	paling baik	best
terbaru	newest	paling baru	newest
tercanggih	most sophisticated/ modern (for example, of technology)	paling canggih	most sophisticated/ modern (for example, of technology)
tercantik	most beautiful	paling cantik	most beautiful
tercepat	fastest, quickest	paling cepat	fastest, quickest
terkaya	richest	paling kaya	richest
termahal	most expensive	paling mahal	most expensive
termodern	most modern	paling modern	most modern
termudah	easiest	paling mudah	easiest
termurah	cheapest	paling murah	cheapest
terpandai	smartest, cleverest	paling pandai	smartest, cleverest
tertinggi	tallest, highest	paling tinggi	tallest, highest



### LATIHAN 1

Answer the following questions in Indonesian.

- 1 Siapa orang yang terkaya di dunia?

### KOSAKA

biarkan t  
daftar l  
dinding v  
hawa e  
perabot f  
rapi i

- 2 Binatang apa yang tercepat larinya?
- 3 Gunung apa yang tertinggi di dunia?
- 4 Toko apa yang termurah di koto anda?
- 5 Apa judul film yang terbaru bulan ini?

## Ter- verbs

Verbs prefixed by *ter-* are either *stative verbs*, indicating no action, or *action verbs* (intransitive or transitive), indicating action. Action verbs describe either accidental action or abilitative action.

### Stative verbs

'Stative' means that the verbs do not suggest any action; they mainly indicate a state of affairs.

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terbagi	divided
terbalik	upside down, inside out, back to front
terbuka	opened
tercatat	noted, listed
terdaftar	registered, enrolled
terdapat	found
tergantung	hung (for example, painting, lamp)
terkenal	well-known
terletak	located
terpenuhi	fulfilled
terpuruk	hidden, buried, in worst state
terputus	broken
tersirat	implied
tertata	organised, neatly put
tertempel	stuck (for example, poster on wall, sticker on book)
tertera	listed
tertulis	written
tertutup	shut, closed

## LATIHAN 2

Complete the following sentences with words from the above list.

- 1 Jakarta \_\_\_\_\_ di pulau Jawa.
- 2 Namanya sudah \_\_\_\_\_ di daftar kelas.
- 3 Poster besar itu \_\_\_\_\_ di dinding kamar saya.
- 4 Perabot rumahnya semua \_\_\_\_\_ rapi.
- 5 Biarkan jendela itu \_\_\_\_\_ karena hawa di ruangan ini panas sekali.
- 6 Aduh, kaki saya sakit sekali karena \_\_\_\_\_

### KOSAKATA

biarkan	to let
daftar	list
dinding	wall
hawa	air, temperature
perabot	furniture
rapi	neat

### Accidental action: intransitive

**Ter-** verbs can be either intransitive or transitive. The verbs in the following table are intransitive. This means that they take a subject but no object. When used as intransitive, **ter-** suggests the following meanings.

- The subject experiences some forced or involuntary motion.
- The subject displays spontaneous expressions.

---

#### FORCED OR INVOLUNTARY MOTION

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terbentur	hit, knocked (usually the head)
terduduk	to fall into sitting position
tergelincir	to skid, slip
terguncang	shaken
terjatuh	to fall
terjerembab	to fall flat on one's face
terjerumus	to fall into a trap or hole
terlempar	flung
terpelanting	darted off, flipped over
terperosok	to sink into, slip into
tersandung	to stumble, trip over
tersasar	lost (lose one's way)

---

#### SPONTANEOUS EXPRESSIONS

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terdiam	to fall silent
ternganga	having one's mouth agape
terpaku	transfixed (literally 'nailed')
tersenyum	to smile
tertawa	to laugh
tertegun	startled, stunned

**Lina**                      **terjatuh**                      **dari tangga.**  
*Subject*                      *Verb*                                      *Prepositional phrase*  
Lina                              fell                                      off the stairs.

**Anak itu**                      **tersenyum**                      **manis.**  
*Subject*                              *Verb*                                      *Adverb*  
The child                              smiled                                      sweetly.





## LATIHAN 3

Work in pairs, taking turns to act out the following words while your partner tries to guess what the word is in Indonesian.

- 1 Terduduk
- 2 Tertawa
- 3 Tersandung
- 4 Terbentur
- 5 Ternganga
- 6 Tersenyum
- 7 Tergelincir
- 8 Terdiam

### Accidental action: transitive

The following *ter-* verbs are used in the sentence preceded by an object, much like the object-focus (passive)—see Chapter 19. *Ter-* in this use suggests the following meanings.

- The object experiences something that it cannot control.
- The object experiences something done by mistake.

### UNCONTROLLABLE EVENT

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terbangun	woken
tergeser	pushed aside
terinjak	stepped on
terkecoh	defrauded, deceived
terpergok	caught red-handed
terpukul	hit (by someone)
tertabrak	hit by something (for example, car)
tertangkap	caught, captured
tertipu	cheated, deceived

### SOMETHING DONE BY MISTAKE

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terbawa	taken by mistake
termakan	eaten by mistake

<b>Saya</b> <i>Object</i> I	<b>terbangun</b> <i>Verb</i> was woken up by	<b>oleh</b> <i>by</i>	<b>suara keras</b> <i>Subject</i> a loud noise	<b>di luar.</b> <i>Prepositional phrase</i> outside.
<b>Mobilnya</b> <i>Object</i> Her car	<b>tertabrak</b> <i>Verb</i> was hit	<b>oleh</b> <i>by</i>	<b>truk</b> <i>Subject</i> a truck	<b>di jalan tol.</b> <i>Prepositional phrase</i> on the tollway.

You can also leave out the 'by phrase' if you wish. In conversation, people often do this. When the addressee wants to know further, he or she can ask for more specific information. For instance, we can just say:

**Mobilnya tertabrak.**

Her car was hit.

If our addressee wants to know who or what hit the car, he or she can ask:

**Oleh siapa?**

By whom?

or:

**Siapa yang menabrak?**

Who hit it?

**Abilitative**

'Abilitative' means 'able to be (can be) what the base word indicates'. The verbs below can also be used as transitive in a manner similar to the object-focus (passive) discussed above.

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terbeli	can be afforded
tercium	can be smelt
terdengar	audible
teringat	comes to mind (recalled)
terjangkau	can be reached
terlihat	visible
terpikir	comes to mind (thought about)

**Baju mahal itu tak terbeli oleh saya.**  
*Object Negative Verb by Subject*  
 I cannot afford that expensive shirt.  
 (Literally: That expensive shirt cannot be bought by me.)

As in the previous transitive example, you can also omit the 'by' phrase.

**Suaranya tidak terdengar.**  
*Object Negative Verb*  
 His voice cannot be heard (inaudible).



**LATIHAN 4**

Choose the correct answer for each of the following sentences.

- 1 Tidak ... oleh saya untuk membawa payung.  
 a terbawa  
 b terpikir  
 c terlihat

**KOSAKAT**  
berdarah d

kas  
payung  
pembunuh  
penuh sesa

## KOSAKATA

berdarah dingin	cold-blooded
kas	cash register
payung	umbrella
pembunuh	murderer
penuh sesak	absolutely full, 'chock-a-block'

- 2 Penjaga toko itu ... mencuri uang dari kas.
  - a teringat
  - b terpergok
  - c terkecoh
- 3 Baru ... olehnya bahwa hari ini adalah hari ulang tahun ibunya.
  - a tertangkap
  - b terpikir
  - c teringat
- 4 Karena bis penuh sesak, kaki saya ... oleh orang.
  - a terlihat
  - b tergeser
  - c terinjak
- 5 Pembunuh berdarah dingin itu sampai sekarang belum ...
  - a tertabrak
  - b tertangkap
  - c tertipu

## Other uses

There are **ter-** words that do not fit into the categories above.

TER- WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
terdiri (dari, atas)	to consist (of)
terhadap	towards (a person)
terlalu	too (followed by an adjective), similar to <b>ke-an</b> with the 'excessiveness' meaning
terlambat	late
termasuk	include
terpaksa	to be forced to
terserah	as you will, up to you

## Ter- and ke- or ke-an

**Ter-** is often replaced by either **ke-** or **ke-an**, with no difference in meaning. The only difference is that **ter-** sounds more formal, whereas **ke-** and **ke-an** are less formal and are more often used in spoken Indonesian.

**Ter-** is replaceable by **ke-** or **ke-an** particularly in transitive verbs.

### Ter- = ke-

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	KE- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terbangun	to be woken by something	kebangun	to be woken by something
terbeli	can be bought, can be afforded	kebeli	can be bought, can be afforded
tercium	can be smelt	kecium	can be smelt
tergeser	to be shifted or to be pushed aside	kegeser	to be shifted or to be pushed aside
terinjak	to be accidentally stepped on	keinjak	to be accidentally stepped on
terjangkau	can be reached, affordable	kejangkau	can be reached, affordable
terpergok	caught red-handed	kepergok	caught red-handed
terpikir	to come to mind	kepikir	to come to mind
terpukul	to be accidentally hit by someone or to be psychologically affected by some event	kepukul	to be accidentally hit by someone or to be psychologically affected by some event
tersasar	to lose one's way	kesasar	to lose one's way
tertabrak	to be accidentally hit by a vehicle	ketabrak	to be accidentally hit by a vehicle
tertangkap	to be caught, to be captured	ketangkap	to be caught, to be captured
tertawa	to laugh	ketawa	to laugh
tertipu	to be cheated, to be conned	ketipu	to be cheated, to be conned

### Ter- = ke-an

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terdengar	audible	kedengaran	audible
terlihat	visible	kelihatan	visible



#### Did you know?

To say that someone is a victim of gossip (believing gossip), you can use the expression **termakan gosip**, literally meaning 'to be eaten by gossip'.

### Reduplicated ter-

Ter- verbs in this group usually describe manner.

TER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
terbahak-bahak	roaring (with laughter)
tergesa-gesa	in a hurry (walking or running)
terkantuk-kantuk	to nod off (in sleepiness)
tersipu-sipu	shyly (of facial expression)

**Dia terbahak-bahak ketika mendengar cerita saya.**  
 He/she roared with laughter when hearing my story.

Sometimes Indonesian speakers add another verb in front of these **ter-**verbs. However, the English translation remains the same.

**Dia tertawa terbahak-bahak ketika mendengar cerita saya.**  
 He/she roared with laughter when hearing my story.



## LATIHAN 5

Create a short story in Indonesian using all of the **ter-** words in each of the following groups.

- 1 Terbahak-bahak  
 Terbentur  
 Tergelincir  
 Tergesa-gesa  
 Tersandung  
 Tertutup
- 2 Terbangun  
 Terjerembab  
 Terpergok  
 Tersenyum  
 Tersipu-sipu  
 Tertidur

## Summary

### Uses of **ter-**

- Adjective: superlative (meaning 'most')
- Verb:
  - Stative
  - Accidental action (intransitive): forced/involuntary motion, spontaneous expressions
  - Accidental action (transitive): uncontrollable event, something done by mistake
  - Abilitative (transitive)
- Other uses
  - Ter-** with a similar meaning to **ke-** or **ke-an**
  - Reduplicated **ter-** to describe manner

## Ke-an

In grammatical terms, **ke-an** is called a *circumfix*; that is, a combination of a prefix (**ke-**) and a suffix (**-an**) to form a word. This chapter looks at the various uses of **ke-an**.

### Ke-an verbs

Many **ke-an** verbs indicate that the subject experiences or suffers from something over which the subject has no control—similar to one of the meanings of **ter-** in Chapter 14. This meaning can be specified further, as follows.

#### Suffer from climatic or bodily conditions

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
banjir	flood	kebanjiran	to be caught in flood
candu	drugs	kecanduan	to be addicted to something
dingin	cold	keedinginan	to suffer from cold
haus	thirsty	kehausan	to be thirsty, parched
hujan	rain	kehujan	to be caught in the rain
kering	dry	kekeringan	to suffer from drought
lapar	hungry	kelaparan	to be starved
panas	hot	kepanasan	to suffer from heat
semut	ant	kesemutan	to get pins and needles (literally 'to be struck or overcome by ants')

**KOSAKA**

berhasil  
pemilik  
tanpa



### LATIHAN 1

Complete each of the following sentences using one of the **ke-an** words from the above list.

- 1 Beberapa negara di Afrika sangat membutuhkan hujan. Sudah beberapa bulan ini mereka menderita \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Aduh, saya tidak bisa berdiri karena kaki saya \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 Kasihan Ani, dia menggigil ('shivering') \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Ibu menghidupkan AC di ruang tamu karena merasa \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Karena hujan yang tidak berhenti selama sehari-hari, rumah saya \_\_\_\_\_.

### Lack of control over emotions

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
senang	glad	kesenangan	to be overcome by glee, overjoyed
susah	sad	kesusahan	to be overcome by hardship
takut	afraid	ketakutan	to be overcome by fear, scared

### Lack of control over a situation or event

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING
bagi	to distribute	kebagian	to be given a share of something
betul	correct	kebetulan	by chance, it so happens
copet	pickpocket	kecopetan	to have one's pocket picked
curi	to steal	kecurian	to have something stolen
habis	finished	kehabisan	to run out of something
hilang	to disappear	kehilangan	to lose something
jatuh	fall	kejatuhan	to be hit by an object falling from above
maling	intruder	kemalingan	to have the house broken into
tahu	to know	ketahuan	to be caught red-handed
tidur	sleep	ketiduran	to fall asleep



## LATIHAN 2

Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1 Kebetulan saya bertemu dengannya di toko sepatu itu.
- 2 Kasihan Joni, rumahnya kemalingan tadi malam.
- 3 Mereka berhasil membawa lari uang Rp5 juta tanpa ketahuan pemilik rumah.
- 4 Kami kehabisan beras, jadi malam ini harus berbelanja.
- 5 Pencuri itu lari ketakutan setelah melihat polisi datang.

In some cases, ke-an words simply indicate that something can be what the base word indicates.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
lihat	to see	kelihatan	visible

In this case, the meaning of **ke-an** is similar to the abilitative meaning of the prefix **ter-** (see Chapter 14). Interestingly, **kelihatan** also extends to 'look, it seems, it looks like' when we add **-nya** at the end.

**Kelihatannya** dia sakit.  
She looks sick.

**Hari ini mendung. Kelihatannya** akan hujan.  
Today is cloudy. It looks like it's going to rain.

**Kelihatannya** ekonomi Indonesia akan membaik.  
It looks like the Indonesian economy will improve.

## Ke-an adjectives

**Ke-an** words in this group generally indicate 'excessiveness' and translate into English as 'too + adjective' (for example, too small, too large). They also mean the same as '**terlalu** (too) + adjective' in Indonesian (for example, **terlalu kecil**, **terlalu besar**). The difference between using **ke-an** and **terlalu** is that **ke-an** can sometimes sound more informal.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
besar	large	kebesaran	too large, too big
capai	tired	kecapaian	too tired, exhausted
gemuk	fat	kegemukan	too fat
kecil	small	kekecilan	too small
kenyang	full	kekenyangan	too full (overeating)
kurus	thin	kekurusan	too thin (of body)
mahal	expensive	kemahalan	too expensive
murah	cheap	kemurahan	too cheap
panjang	long	kepanjangan	too long
pendek	short	kependekan	too short
rendah	low	kerendahan	too low
tebal	thick	ketebalan	too thick
tinggi	high	ketinggian	too high
tipis	thin	ketipisan	too thin (not for body)

When **ke-an** is applied to base words indicating a particular part of the day, such as morning, afternoon or night, it means 'something happens at an inappropriate time'. For example, coming home too late at night or ringing someone too early in the morning.



eaning  
xtends

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
malam	night	kemalaman	too late (at night)
pagi	morning	kepagian	too early (in the morning)
siang	afternoon	kesiangan	too late (in the day), oversleep (get up too late)
sore	evening	kesorean	too late (in the afternoon)



### Handy expression

A useful word to know with the 'excessiveness' meaning is **keterlaluan**, which means 'too much, too far, (of behaviour)'. It comes from **terlalu** ('too').

Dia memang **keterlaluan**. Sudah berkali-kali **diperingatkan jangan terlambat, tapi masih juga begitu**.  
He/she has indeed gone **too far**. I've warned him/her repeatedly not to be late, but he/she still does it.

nd  
l, too

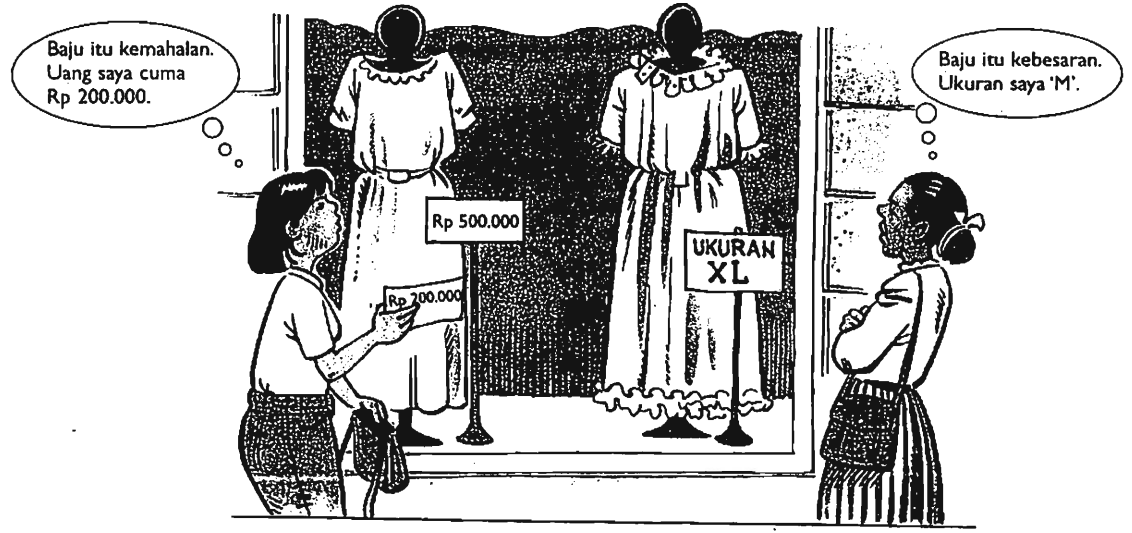
rence  
sound



## LATIHAN 3

Match these sentences with the following pictures.

- 1 Rok itu kebesaran.
- 2 Rok itu kemahalan; uang saya cuma Rp 200.000.
- 3 Anjing itu ketakutan.
- 4 Joni ketiduran di kelas.



part of the  
happens  
at night or



## Ke-an abstract nouns

Ke-an also forms abstract nouns. By 'abstract' we mean things that we cannot touch, see or feel.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
bahagia	happy	kebahagiaan	happiness
bersih	clean	kebersihan	cleanliness
cantik	beautiful	kecantikan	beauty
cepat	fast	kecepatan	speed, velocity
duduk	to sit	kedudukan	position, rank
gembira	joyful	kegembiraan	joyfulness, excitement
giat	active	kegiatan	activity
hidup	live	kehidupan	life
kacau	mixed up	kekacauan	havoc
kuat	strong	kekuatan	strength, power
lisan	oral	kelisanan	orality, oracy
maju	to go forward	kemajuan	progress, advancement
mati	to die	kematian	death
puas	satisfied	kepuasan	satisfaction
satu	one	kesatuan	unity
sehat	healthy	kesehatan	health

We can also attach **ke-an** to words that already have a prefix, such as **ber-**. For example, the word **berada** (to be at a place) comes from the base word **ada** (there is/are, exist) and the prefix **ber-**. When we add **ke-an**, we get **keberadaan**, which means 'existence'.

Below are more examples.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
beraksara	literate	keberaksaraan	literacy
bersama	together	kebersamaan	togetherness



### Did you know?

We can also form longer **ke-an** abstract nouns by adding the negative word **tidak** before the base word.

TIDAK + BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	KE-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
Tidak adil	not fair	ketidakadilan	injustice
Tidak mengerti	not understand	ketidakkengertian	incomprehension
Tidak pasti	not certain	ketidakpastian	uncertainty
Tidak tahu	not know	ketidaktahuan	ignorance

## Ke-an words with dual meanings

Some ke-an words have two meanings. Depending on how we use them, they may indicate one thing or the other.

KE-AN WORD	ADJECTIVE	ABSTRACT NOUN
kelaparan	struck by hunger	hunger
kepanjangan	too long	unabbreviated form (for example, of a name)
kependekan	too short	abbreviated form
kerendahan	too low	lowness
ketinggian	too high	height

KE-AN WORD	QUANTITY WORD	QUANTITY WORD
kebanyakan	too much, too many	most



## LATIHAN 4

Match each Indonesian sentence in the left column with its English equivalent in the right column.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Kasihan adikmu, dia kecapaian.   | a Don't overeat, or you will be <u>bloated</u> .   |
| 2 Kegembiraannya meluap-luap.  | b I feel sorry for your younger sibling: he/she is <u>exhausted</u> .  |
| 3 Jangan makan terlalu banyak. nanti kamu kekenyangan.                                       | c My mother's <u>position</u> in the company is director.  |
| 4 Mobil itu melaju dengan kecepatan 90 km per jam menuju Canberra.                           | d Literally: His <u>joy</u> is overflowing. (He is over the moon.)   |
| 5 Kedudukan ibu saya di perusahaan itu adalah sebagai direktur.                              | e The car moves at a <u>speed</u> of 90 kilometres per hour in the direction of Canberra.                          |
| 6 Kemarin saya kecepetan ketika di bis.  | f My friend is <u>looking</u> very sad today.  |
| 7 Wah, saya malu sekali tadi pagi di kelas karena saya ketiduran ketika guru saya berbicara. | g I'm sorry, ma'am, I'm <u>having</u> a financial <u>hardship</u> , so I haven't been able to pay my (house) rent. |
| 8 Teman saya kelihatan sedih sekali hari ini.  | h Whoever is <u>found</u> cheating in this exam will get zero.   |
| 9 Barang siapa ketahuan menyontek dalam ujian ini akan mendapat nol.                         | i I was so embarrassed this morning in class because I <u>fell asleep</u> while my teacher was talking.            |
| 10 Maaf Bu, saya sedang kesulitan uang, jadi belum bisa membayar sewa rumah.                 | j Yesterday I <u>had</u> my <u>pocket</u> <u>picked</u> when I was on the bus.                                     |



use



of a name)



English

will be

young  
aus'  
in

over the

speed of 90  
in the  
t.  
very sad

having a  
o I haven't  
(house)

teating in  
ero.  
d this  
cause I fell  
cher was

pocket  
on the bus.

## Summary

### Uses of ke-an:

- **Ke-an** verbs: Generally indicating lack of control; for example, *over climatic* or bodily condition, emotion or over an event or situation. When attached to base words indicating parts of the day, **ke-an** indicates that something happens at an inappropriate time.
- **Ke-an** adjectives: generally indicating excessiveness (in English: 'too ...')
- **Ke-an** abstract nouns
- Some **ke-an** words have dual meanings.

# 16

## PeN-

Words with the peN- prefix are usually either nouns or adjectives.

The capital letter N in peN- indicates the same sound changes that occur in meN-verbs. Indeed, many peN- words have corresponding meN- verbs.

The (N) is written in parentheses because in some cases there are no sound changes; for example, in words that may have corresponding ber-verbs.

### PeN- nouns

PeN- nouns are derived from various base words that are either verbs, nouns or adjectives.

**A person who does, or is associated with, what the base word indicates**

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN- NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
baca	to read	pembaca	reader
bantu	to help	pembantu	helper, servant
beli	to buy	pembeli	buyer
besar	big	pembesar	important government official
bohong	to lie	pembohong	liar
bual	to boast, brag	pembual	bragger
candu	illegal drugs	pecandu	drug addict
cinta	love	pencinta	lover of something
curi	to steal	pencuri	thief
datang	to come	pendatang	migrant
dengar	to hear, listen	pendengar	listener
jaga	to take care	penjaga	caretaker, keeper
jahat	evil, wicked	penjahat	criminal
jajah	to colonise	penjajah	coloniser
jual	to sell	penjual	seller

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN- NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
mabuk	drunk	pemabuk	drunkard, alcoholic
makan	to eat	pemakan	eater
minum	to drink	peminum	drinker (alcoholic)
muda	young	pemuda	young man, youth
pungut	to pick up, collect	pemungut	collector
syair	poem	penyair	poet
tulis	to write	penulis	writer

Some words do not undergo sound changes. Often, these are words that have corresponding **ber-** verbs.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN- NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
dagang	to trade	pedagang	trader
gulat	to wrestle	pegulat	wrestler
jalan	to walk	pejalan (kaki)	pedestrian
kerja	to work	pekerja	worker
renang	to swim	perenang	swimmer
tenis	to play tennis	petenis	tennis player
tinju	to box	petinju	boxer

In some cases, the meaning of the **peN-** word is a metaphorical one. For example, the word **penduduk** does not mean 'person who sits', but rather 'person who occupies'; that is, 'inhabitant'.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN- NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
duduk	to sit	penduduk	inhabitant, population

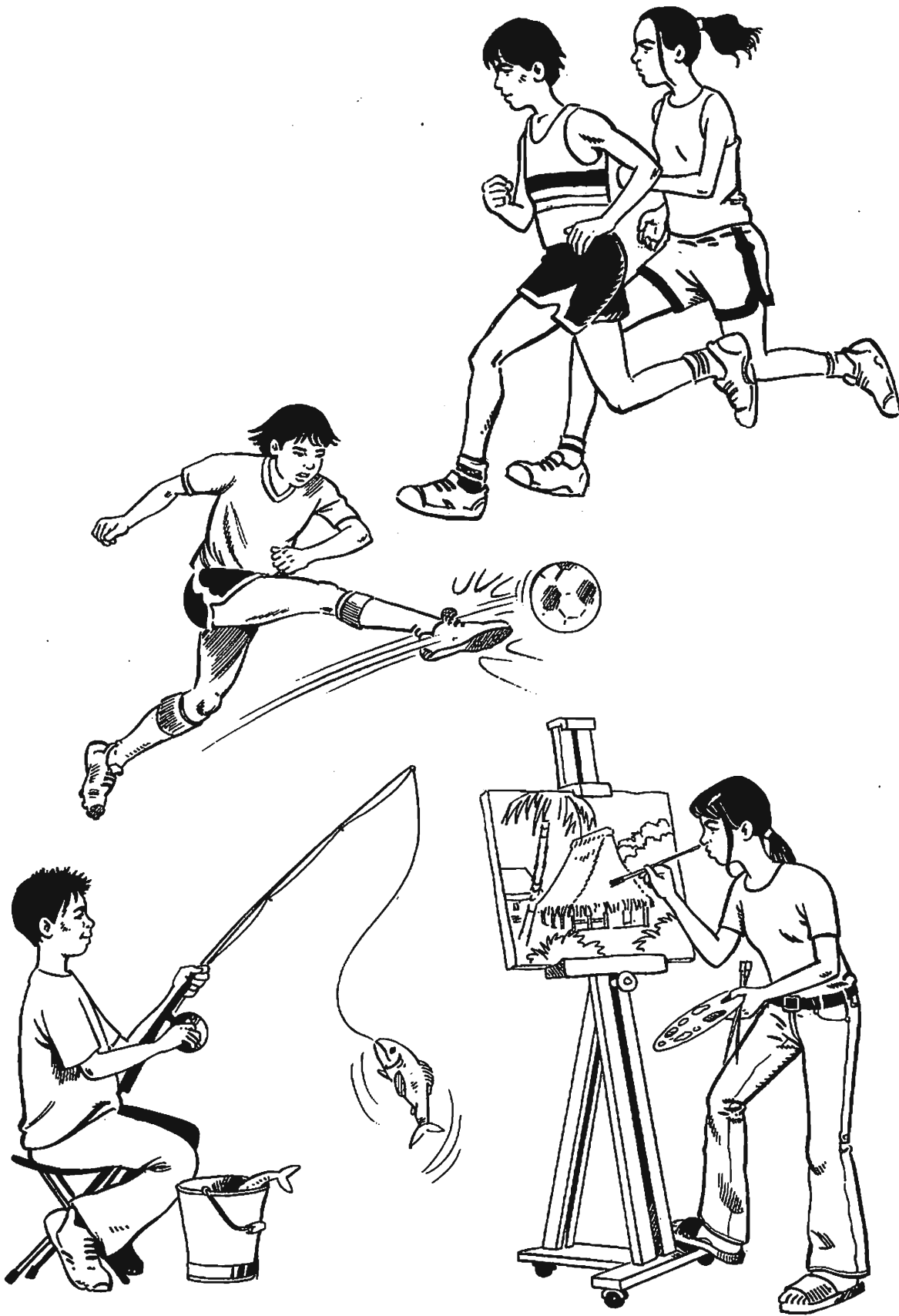


## LATIHAN 1

Here are some pictures of people associated with certain activities or professions. Match each of the following **peN-** words with the corresponding picture.

- 1 Pelari
- 2 Pelukis
- 3 Pemain sepak bola
- 4 Pemancing ikan
- 5 Pemandang









**Be careful!**

Although **peN-** and **per-** often mean 'the person who does something associated with the base word', they cannot be applied to all cases. For instance, the Indonesian word for 'chef' is **tukang masak**, not **pemasak**. The word **tukang** means 'person skilled in a certain area, or labourer'. Some other examples are:

<b>tukang becak</b>	rickshaw driver (not <b>pebecak</b> )
<b>tukang ledeng</b>	plumber (not <b>peledeng</b> )
<b>tukang listrik</b>	electrician (not <b>pelistrik</b> )

Here are some more words for which we can use **tukang**. Find out how to say them in Indonesian.

- welder
- photographer
- carpenter
- magician
- hitman

**Something having the function associated with the base word**

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN- NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>buka</b>	to open	<b>pembuka</b>	opener (for example, can opener)
<b>dingin</b>	cold	<b>pendingin</b>	cooler
<b>garis</b>	line	<b>penggaris</b>	ruler
<b>hapus</b>	to erase	<b>penghapus</b>	eraser, duster (for blackboards)
<b>ikat</b>	to tie	<b>pengikat</b>	instrument for tying
<b>panas</b>	hot	<b>pemanas</b>	heater
<b>potong</b>	to cut	<b>pemotong</b>	cutter
<b>pukul</b>	to hit	<b>pemukul</b>	instrument for hitting

Some other similar words simply mean 'something associated with the base word'.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN- NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>sakit</b>	sick	<b>penyakit</b>	sickness, illness
<b>sebab</b>	to cause	<b>penyebab</b>	cause



**LATIHAN 2**

The following are noun phrases containing **peN-** words. Find out what they mean in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Hidangan pembuka
- 2 Pecandu musik techno

- 3 Pemakan daging
- 4 Pembuka kaleng
- 5 Pemungut sampah
- 6 Pemandang baru
- 7 Pendingin ruangan
- 8 Pemotong rumput
- 9 Penjual rokok
- 10 Penjaga toko
- 11 Pengikat rambut
- 12 Pencinta binatang

### PeN- adjectives

Some peN- words are adjectives and they are derived from adjectival base words. The derived adjectives mean 'person having the characteristics described by the base word'.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN- ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
diam	quiet	pendiam	quiet person
malas	lazy	pemalas	lazy person
malu	shy	pemalu	shy person
marah	angry	pemarah	person who is quick to anger
riang	cheerful	periang	cheerful person



### LATIHAN 3

Work in pairs, taking turns to interview each other in Indonesian about the characteristics of five people you know well. You must use the adjectives in the above table in your description, preceded by the 'degree words' listed below. More than one adjective should be used for each description.

- sedikit (a little)
- tidak begitu (not so)
- sangat (very)
- paling (most)

Example:

**Ayah saya: sedikit pemalu dan sangat pendiam.**  
My father: a little shy and very quiet.



## LATIHAN 4

Give the **peN-** form of the following base words, then check the English meaning of each **peN-** word by consulting your dictionary.

BASE WORD	PEN- FORM	ENGLISH MEANING
1 salur		
2 bakar		
3 buru		
4 didik		
5 jilat		
6 samar		
7 culik		
8 samun		
9 selidik		
10 teliti		

### Summary

- **PeN-** words are mostly nouns, but some are adjectives.
- They often have either corresponding **meN-** or **ber-** verbs.
- **PeN-** nouns mean either 'person' or 'thing' associated with the base word.
- **PeN-** adjectives describe the characteristics of a person.



## -an

Like other affixes, the **-an** suffix has several functions, the main one being to form a noun. Its other functions are to form adjectives and adverbs.

### Forming a noun

Nouns with **-an** can be derived from verbs or adjectives.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>bantu</b>	to help	<b>bantuan</b>	help, assistance, aid
<b>bundar</b>	round	<b>bundaran</b>	roundabout
<b>gantung</b>	to hang	<b>gantungan</b>	hanger
<b>karang</b>	to compose an essay	<b>karangan</b>	essay
<b>keluh</b>	to complain, sigh	<b>keluhan</b>	complaint
<b>kenal</b>	to know a person	<b>kenalan</b>	acquaintance
<b>kotor</b>	dirty	<b>kotoran</b>	dirt, excrement
<b>main</b>	to play	<b>mainan</b>	toy
<b>makan</b>	to eat	<b>makanan</b>	food
<b>masuk</b>	to go in, enter	<b>masukan</b>	input
<b>minum</b>	to drink	<b>minuman</b>	drink
<b>parkir</b>	to park	<b>parkiran</b>	parking lot

### Modifying another noun

Words with the **-an** suffix can also be used in a noun phrase to modify another noun.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	NOUN PHRASE	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>beli</b>	to buy	<b>barang belian</b>	purchased goods
<b>curi</b>	to steal	<b>barang curian</b>	stolen goods
<b>pinjam</b>	to borrow	<b>uang pinjaman</b>	borrowed money (debt)
<b>sewa</b>	to rent, hire	<b>rumah sewaan</b>	rented house



## Reduplicated nouns

### TO INDICATE VARIETY

NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
buah-buahan	variety of fruit
bunga-bunga	variety of flowers
daun-daunan	variety of leaves
obat-obatan	medication (variety of medicine)
sayur-sayuran	variety of vegetables
tumbuh-tumbuhan	variety of plants, flora

### TO RESEMBLE WHAT IS INDICATED BY THE BASE WORD

In this group are words that can be nouns or verbs. The nouns usually refer to toy things, while the verbs refer to playing or pretending to do something.

NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
kuda-kudaan	rocking-horse
mobil-mobilan	toy car
orang-orangan	toy person (for example, scarecrow)
rumah-rumahan	toy house
(main) koboi-koboian	to play cowboys
masak-masakan	to pretend to cook
sembunyi-sembunyan	to play hide-and-seek



## LATIHAN 1

Below are some base words and their meaning in English. Form a noun from each by adding the suffix **-an**. Guess the meaning in English of each **-an** noun, then check your dictionary to see if your guess is correct.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
1. pukul	to hit		
2. pakai	to wear		
3. tulis	to write		
4. baca	to read		
5. tonton	to watch		
6. jual	to sell		
7. peluk	to embrace		
8. tanam	to plant, sow		
9. cicil	to pay in instalments		
10. tabrak	to collide		

ING



## LATIHAN 2

Translate these noun phrases into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Barang dagangan
- 2 Uang cicilan
- 3 Uang simpanan
- 4 Anak jalanan
- 5 Mobil sewaan
- 6 Baju pinjaman
- 7 Jam tangan curian
- 8 Warna celupan
- 9 Manajer bohongan
- 10 Pekerjaan borongan



## LATIHAN 3

Translate these noun phrases into Indonesian.

- 1 Toy fish
- 2 Toy train
- 3 Toy calculator
- 4 Toy telephone
- 5 Toy computer

### Forming an adjective

Adjectives with the suffix **-an** are derived from either another adjective or a noun.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	-AN ADJECTIVE	ENGLISH MEANING
kampung	village	kampungan	country bumpkin (negative connotation)
murah	cheap	murahan	trashy, low quality

### -an with numbers

When **-an** is attached to some numbers, it means 'in the multiplication of'.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	-AN WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
ratus	hundred	ratusan	hundreds of
ribuan	thousand	ribuan	thousands of
juta	million	jutaan	millions of
miliar	billion	miliaran	billions of

### KOSAKATA

barang  
dirayakan  
kecelakaan  
memaki  
membeli  
menang  
rusak  
uang kas  
usaha

When **-an** is attached to some fractional numbers, however, the meaning is quite different.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	-AN WORD	ENGLISH MEANING
seperempat	one-quarter	perempatan	intersection
sepertiga	one-third	pertigaan	T-intersection
setengah	half	pertengahan	middle

## Forming an adverb

Adverbs with the suffix **-an** are usually reduplicated.

BASE WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	-AN ADVERB	ENGLISH MEANING
besar	large	besar-besaran	on a large scale
habis	all gone	habis-habisan	exhaustively
kecil	small	kecil-kecilan	on a small scale
mati	to die, dead	mati-matian	with a lot of effort
terang	clear	terang-terangan	openly, frankly
untung	lucky	untung-untungan	with luck



### KOSAKATA

barang	goods
dirayakan	celebrated
kecelakaan	accident
memaki	to swear
membeli	to buy
menang	to win
rusak	broken
uang kas	cash
usaha	business

### LATIHAN 4

Complete each of the following sentences with a word from the box. Each word may be used only once.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| pertengahan     | mati-matian     |
| kampung         | kecil-kecilan   |
| perempatan      | untung-untungan |
| besar-besaran   | habis-habisan   |
| terang-terangan | murahan         |

- 1 Dia berusaha \_\_\_\_\_ untuk menang.
- 2 Joni dengan \_\_\_\_\_ mencuri uang kas di toko itu.
- 3 Ulang tahun bapaknya yang ke-50 dirayakan \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Dia memaki temannya \_\_\_\_\_ kemarin.
- 5 Bu Yati membuka usaha \_\_\_\_\_ di pasar.
- 6 Keluarga Burhan akan berlibur ke Adelaide pada \_\_\_\_\_ tahun.
- 7 Jangan membeli barang \_\_\_\_\_, nanti cepat rusak.
- 8 Kemarin terjadi kecelakaan di \_\_\_\_\_ jalan itu.
- 9 Membeli tattslotto itu \_\_\_\_\_; bisa menang, bisa tidak.
- 10 Lina tidak suka kepada Toni, karena Toni \_\_\_\_\_.

---

## Summary

- The majority of words with the **-an** suffix are nouns.
- Words with the **-an** suffix can also be verbs, adjectives or adverbs.
- Reduplicated **-an** words are either nouns or adverbs.



## PeN-an and Per-an

Words with **peN-an** and **per-an** are mostly abstract nouns (things we cannot touch, see or feel). Many of these nouns come from verbs and, as such, they carry some element of 'action' in their meaning. This is rather different from many **ke-an** words which are also abstract nouns, but in which no 'action' is implied.

However, not all **peN-an** and **per-an** words come from verbs. Some are noun-based, which makes them more like **ke-an** nouns.

Because of their abstract nature, **peN-an** and **per-an** words are abundant in areas of language use where abstract concepts are required, such as newspaper and magazine articles, books, academic writing and talks about economic, historical, political and other issues.

### PeN-an

Most **peN-an** words are derived from **meN-** verbs. This is why the sound changes in **meN-** verbs are also found in **peN-an** words.

MEN- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>memakai</u>	to use	<u>pemakaian</u>	use, usage
<u>memandang</u>	to gaze	<u>pemandangan</u>	scenery
<u>membaca</u>	to read	<u>pembacaan</u>	reading
<u>membangun</u>	to build	<u>pembangunan</u>	development
<u>membeli</u>	to buy, purchase	<u>pembelian</u>	purchase
<u>membuat</u>	to make	<u>pembuatan</u>	the making of
<u>menanam</u>	to plant	<u>penanaman</u>	the planting of
<u>mencium</u>	to smell, kiss, sniff	<u>penciuman</u>	sense of smell
<u>mendengar</u>	to hear	<u>pendengaran</u>	sense of hearing
<u>menginap</u>	to stay the night	<u>penginapan</u>	inn, motel
<u>mengirim</u>	to send	<u>pengiriman</u>	the sending of, dispatch
<u>menjual</u>	to sell	<u>penjualan</u>	the selling of, sale
<u>menulis</u>	to write	<u>penulisan</u>	the writing of
<u>menyeberang</u>	to cross (for example, street)	<u>penyeberangan</u>	crossing

## MeN-kan and meN-i

Some peN-an nouns also come from meN-kan or meN-i words.

MEN-I OR MEN-KAN VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	PEN-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>m</u> embicarakan	to talk about	<u>p</u> embicaraan	talk, discussion
<u>m</u> enduduki	to occupy	<u>p</u> endudukan	occupation
<u>m</u> enemukan	to find	<u>p</u> enemuan	finding, discovery
<u>m</u> enerjemahkan	to translate	<u>p</u> enerjemahan	the translating of, translation
<u>m</u> engetahui	to know	<u>p</u> engetahuan	knowledge
<u>m</u> enggunakan	to use	<u>p</u> enggunaan	use, usage

## Per-an

Many per-an nouns come from ber- verbs and, therefore, like their peN-an counterparts, most of them have an element of 'action' in their meaning. There are no sound changes involved with per-an nouns.

BER- VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	PER-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>ber</u> beda	to differ	<u>per</u> bedaan	difference
<u>ber</u> buat	to do, commit	<u>per</u> buatan	act, behaviour
<u>ber</u> dagang	to trade, do business	<u>per</u> dagangan	trade
<u>ber</u> jalan	to walk	<u>per</u> jalanan	trip
<u>ber</u> tanding	to compete	<u>per</u> tandingan	competition
<u>ber</u> tani	to farm	<u>per</u> tanian	farming
<u>ber</u> temu	to meet	<u>per</u> temuan	meeting



### Note

The consonant 'r' in the prefix ber- disappears when attached to the base word kerja. The per-an noun derived from this verb follows the same pattern; thus pekerjaan, not perkerjaan.

BER- + KERJA	ENGLISH MEANING	PER-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<u>ber</u> kerja	to work	<u>pe</u> kerjaan	work, job

In some cases, words having the same base word can be transformed into either meN-(kan/i) or ber- verbs, and from these verbs we can get either peN-an or per-an abstract nouns. Each affixation results in a different meaning.



### Other per-an nouns

Some other **per-an** nouns are rather irregular in the sense that they are not systematically derived from **ber-** verbs. The following are either from **meN-(kan/i)** verbs or from base words.

BASE WORD	MEN-(KAN/I) VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	PER-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>bintang</b>		star	<b>perbintangan</b>	astrology, astronomy
<b>coba</b>	<b>mencoba</b>	to try	<b>percobaan</b>	experiment
<b>film</b>	<b>memfilm</b>	to film	<b>perfilman</b>	film industry
<b>kota</b>		city	<b>perkotaan</b>	city areas
<b>nikah</b>	<b>menikah</b>	to get married	<b>pernikahan</b>	wedding
<b>pinta</b>	<b>meminta</b>	to request	<b>permintaan</b>	request, demand
<b>pustaka</b>		reading	<b>perpustakaan</b>	library
<b>tolong</b>	<b>menolong</b>	to help	<b>pertolongan</b>	help, assistance



#### Did you know?

Some other abstract nouns are prefixed by **pe-** rather than **peN-** or **per-**, unlike the ones we previously encountered. These nouns have irregular bases: some are from base words; some are from **meN-kan**; some are from **ber-**.

### Pe-an

Some other abstract nouns are prefixed by **pe-** rather than **peN-** or **per-**, unlike the ones we previously encountered. These nouns have irregular bases: some are from base words; some are from **meN-kan**; some are from **ber-**.

BASE WORD	MEN-KAN OR BER-WORD	ENGLISH MEANING	PE-AN NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>gunung</b>		mountain	<b>pegunungan</b>	mountainous/hilly areas
<b>desa</b>		village	<b>pedesaan</b>	village/country areas
<b>gadai</b>	<b>menggadaikan</b>	to pawn	<b>pegadaian</b>	pawnshop
<b>kubur</b>	<b>menguburkan</b>	to bury	<b>pekuburan</b>	graveyard
<b>mukim</b>	<b>bermukim</b>	to settle	<b>pemukiman</b>	settlement



### LATIHAN 2

The following table contains some Indonesian verbs with their English meaning. Write the abstract noun form of each verb and guess its English meaning. Check your answers in the dictionary. The first one is done for you.

VERB	ENGLISH MEANING	ABSTRACT NOUN	ENGLISH MEANING
1 mengalami	to experience	peN-alaman	experience
2 merawat	to attend	per-awatan	care
3 mengobati	to treat medically	peN-gepok	illness
4 berkembang	to develop	ber-embang	development
5 memahami	to comprehend	meN-aham	understanding
6 membuka	to open	meN-buka	opening
7 menutup	to close	meN-tutup	closing
8 menderita	to suffer	meN-derita	suffering
9 memeriksa	to check, inspect	meN-eriksa	inspection
10 menata	to arrange	meN-ata	arrangement



### LATIHAN 3

Listed below on the left are some noun phrases pertaining to beauty and skin care found in various Indonesian magazines. Match them with their English counterparts on the right.

- |                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Penataan rambut      | Premature aging   |
| 2 Perawatan kecantikan | Beauty care       |
| 3 Penuaan dini         | Hair styling      |
| 4 Peremajaan kulit     | Body slimming     |
| 5 Pelangsingan tubuh   | Skin rejuvenation |



### LATIHAN 4

Below are some common phrases in English. Do you know how to say them in Indonesian? Use the **peN-an** or **per-an** prefix for the English words ending with '-ing'. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- Bread making
- Language teaching
- Candle making
- Poetry reading
- House buying
- Book publishing
- Dictionary making
- Book binding
- Letter writing
- Fund raising (in Indonesian, literally 'fund collecting')

### Summary

- Most **peN-an** and **per-an** words are abstract nouns; some are concrete nouns.
- Most are derived from verbs and, as such, they contain an element of 'action' in their meaning. Some are from nouns, much like **ke-an** nouns.
- Many **peN-an** nouns come from **meN-**, **meN-kan** or **meN-i** verbs.
- Many **per-an** nouns are from **ber-** verbs. Some others are either from **meN-** verbs or from base words.
- **Pe-an** nouns are from either **meN-** or **ber-** verbs or from base words.



## Subject-focus and Object-focus

The terms *subject-focus* and *object-focus* are so called because in these sentence constructions our attention is focused on the subject or the object of the sentence. You will find that they are also called *active voice* and *passive voice* in other grammar books.

A *subject* is, generally speaking, a doer, actor or *agent* of an action.

An *object* is, on the other hand, someone or something that is affected by the action performed by the subject.

For example, if my dog ate a cake that I have just baked, the cake is the object (it is 'affected' by the action of eating) and the dog is the subject (that does the eating).

In effect, then, the subject-focus and the object-focus constructions are really about what it is in the sentence that becomes our focus of attention. Whatever gets the focus, comes first in the sentence. If the focus is on the subject, the subject comes first in the sentence; if the focus is on the object, the object comes first.

### Subject-focus

The subject-focus construction can be identified by the following.

- 1 The subject comes before the verb and the object.
- 2 The subject is followed by a *meN-*, *meN-kan* or *meN-i* transitive verb.
- 3 There may be an auxiliary verb before the *meN-* verb (see below).
- 4 The object follows the verb directly, with nothing preceding it (for example, a preposition).

In short, a simple subject-focus sentence consists of:

#### SUBJECT - TRANSITIVE VERB - OBJECT

<b>Nina</b>	<b>menulis</b>	<b>cerpen.</b>
Subject	Verb	Object
Nina	is writing	a short story.

<b>Dokter</b>	<b>memeriksa</b>	<b>pasien</b>
Subject	Verb	Object
The doctor	is examining	a patient.

To make our sentences a little more interesting, we can insert a few extra things, such as auxiliary verbs, adverbs and prepositional phrases (see earlier chapters for prepositional phrases).

### Auxiliary verbs

*Auxiliary verbs* are words that are complementary to the main verb. In the sentence, they appear before the main verb. Auxiliaries express such things as *aspect* and *modality*. Aspect indicates whether an action is in the process, completed or not completed, or will be completed. Modality expresses such things as uncertainty, possibility or necessity.

ASPECT	ENGLISH MEANING	MODALITY	ENGLISH MEANING
<b>sedang</b>	in process of	<b>barangkali</b>	maybe, probably, possibly
<b>belum</b>	not yet	<b>bisa</b>	can, be able to
<b>sudah</b>	already	<b>boleh</b>	may
<b>akan</b>	will, be going to	<b>dapat</b>	can, be able to
		<b>harus</b>	must, have to
		<b>ingin</b>	want, wish to, will
		<b>mau</b>	want, wish to, will
		<b>mungkin</b>	maybe, probably, possibly

### Adverbs

*Adverbs* are words that indicate such things as *frequency*, *manner* and *time*. They can be inserted either at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

INDICATION	ADVERB	ENGLISH MEANING
Frequency	<b>lima kali seminggu</b>	five times a week
Manner	<b>pelan-pelan</b>	slowly
Time	<b>pagi ini</b>	this morning

Let us now see how we can incorporate auxiliary verbs, adverbs and prepositional phrases into our subject-focus construction.

<b>Nina</b>	<b>akan</b>	<b>menulis</b>	<b>cerpen</b>	<b>besok.</b>
Subject	Auxiliary verb	Main verb	Object	Adverb (time)
Nina	will	write	a short story	tomorrow.
<b>Dokter</b>	<b>sedang</b>	<b>memeriksa</b>	<b>pasien</b>	<b>di ruang 3.</b>
Subject	Auxiliary verb	Main verb	Object	Prepositional phrc
The doctor	is in the process of	examining	a patient	in Room 3.

You can also insert two auxiliary verbs before the main verb, one indicating aspect and the other indicating modality.

<b>Nina</b>	<b>barangkali</b>	<b>akan</b>	<b>menulis</b>	<b>cerpen</b>	<b>besok.</b>
Subject	Auxiliary verb	Auxiliary verb	Main verb	Object	Adverb (time)
Nina	will	probably	write	a short story	tomorrow.





## THIRD PERSON (PERSON OR THING SPOKEN ABOUT)

Singular: Pronouns: **dia, -nya**  
Proper names: for example, **Tommy, Mira, Pak Hamid**  
Other noun phrases: for example, **kucing itu, murid itu**

Plural: Pronoun: **mereka**  
Proper names: for example, **Tommy dan Mira**  
Other noun phrases: for example, **kucing-kucing itu, murid-murid itu**

### Step 2

If the subject is the first or second person, the order is:

**OBJECT - SUBJECT - VERB** (no prefix, but retain suffix if there)

If the subject is the third person, there are two variations.

#### VARIATION A

If the subject is either a pronoun (for example, **dia, mereka**) or a proper name (for example, **Bu Rani, guru-guru itu, para sopir bis**), the order is:

**OBJECT - VERB** (with *di-* prefix and suffix, if there) - **(OLEH) SUBJECT**



#### Note

The word **oleh** (by), is optional. When it is followed by the pronoun **dia**, this pronoun is shortened into **-nya**.

**oleh dia** → **olehnya**

When speaking informally, people often prefer the word **sama** to **oleh**.

<b>Baju saya</b>	<b>dicuci</b>	<b>sama</b>	<b>dia</b>
Object	Verb	by	Subject
My shirt	was washed	by	him
→ He washed my shirt.			

#### VARIATION B

If the subject is a pronoun, you can follow the same order as for first and second persons. We cannot do this if the subject is a proper name (for example, **Pak Hamid**) or a noun phrase (for example, **kucing itu**).

## Summary of the rules

SUBJECT	RULE
First or second person	<b>Object – Subject – Verb</b> (no prefix on verb; suffix retained)
Third person (pronoun or proper name)	<b>Object – Verb – (oleh) Subject</b> (prefix di- on verb; suffix retained)
Third person (pronoun only)	<b>Object – Subject – Verb</b> (no prefix on verb; suffix retained)

## Transforming subject-focus into object-focus

Now we will see how the rules for subject-focus and object-focus sentences can be applied to sentences.

### First or second person subject

#### SUBJECT-FOCUS

SUBJECT	VERB (TRANSITIVE MEN-)	OBJECT
Saya Kami Kita	membuat	kue coklat.
Anda Kamu Saudara (Eng)kau	membuat	kue coklat

#### OBJECT-FOCUS

OBJECT	SUBJECT	VERB (NO PREFIX)
Kue coklat	saya kami kita	buat
Kue coklat	Anda Kamu Saudara (Eng)kau	buat

**KOSAKA**

kue  
melempai

memenan  
mencari  
mengikut

sayembar

## Third person subject

### SUBJECT-FOCUS

SUBJECT	VERB (TRANSITIVE MEN-)	OBJECT
Dia	membuat	kue coklat
Mereka		
Pak Burhan	membuat	kue coklat
Bu Made		
Guru-guru itu		

### OBJECT-FOCUS

Variation A: Subject is either pronoun or proper name

OBJECT	VERB (DI- PREFIX)	(OLEH) SUBJECT
Kue coklat	dibuat	olehnya, -nya (oleh) mereka
Kue coklat	dibuat	(oleh) Pak Burhan (oleh) Bu Made (oleh) guru-guru itu

Variation B: Subject is pronoun only

OBJECT	SUBJECT	VERB (NO PREFIX)
Kue coklat	dia	buat
	mereka	



## LATIHAN 2

The following are simple subject-focus sentences with either first, second or third person subject. Transform them into object-focus sentences as shown above.

### First person subject

1 Saya	membaca	novel
2 Kami	menonton	televisi
3 Kita	menyanyikan	sebuah lagu

### Second person subject

4 Anda	menjual	pakaian
5 Kamu	mengambil	koran
6 Saudara	mendengarkan	kuliah

### Third person subject

7 Dia	mencari	pekerjaan
8 Mereka	mengikuti	ujian
9 Anita	memenangkan	sayembara
10 Anak-anak	melempari	pohon

### KOSAKATA

kuliah lecture  
 melempari to throw something at (repeatedly)  
 memenangkan to win  
 mencari to look for  
 mengikuti ujian to sit an exam  
 sayembara competition

## Object-focus with auxiliary, prepositional phrase and adverb

We saw earlier that simple subject-focus constructions consisting of Subject – Verb – Object can be made more interesting by adding auxiliary verbs, prepositional phrases and adverbs. These constructions can be transformed into object-focus constructions. The simplest way to do this is by following the above rules, while leaving these additional things where they are. That is to say, we do not need to move them around or make any other changes the way we do with the subject, verb and object.

### SUBJECT-FOCUS

**Nina akan menulis cerpen besok.**  
*Subject Auxiliary verb Main verb Object Adverb of time*

### OBJECT-FOCUS

**Cerpen akan ditulis Nina besok.**  
*Object Auxiliary verb Main verb Subject Adverb of time*

### SUBJECT-FOCUS

**Dokter sedang memeriksa pasien di ruang 3.**  
*Subject Auxiliary verb Main verb Object Prepositional phrase*

### OBJECT-FOCUS

**Pasien sedang diperiksa dokter di ruang 3.**  
*Object Auxiliary verb Main verb Subject Prepositional phrase*



## LATIHAN 3

Transform the sentences below into object-focus constructions. Remember to keep the auxiliary verb, prepositional phrase and the adverb where they are in each sentence.

- |   |          |        |               |                 |               |
|---|----------|--------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 | Kami     | akan   | mengunjungi   | keluarga Burhan | bulan depan.  |
| 2 | Istrinya | sedang | mengantarakan | anak mereka     | ke dokter.    |
| 3 | Anda     | boleh  | menonton      | program itu     | besok         |
| 4 | Bu Tirta | akan   | menjual       | pisang          | di pasar      |
| 5 | Saya     | ingin  | menanam       | peohon apel     | di kebun saya |

### KOSAKATA

menanam to plant  
 mengantarkan to take  
 someone/  
 something  
 somewhere  
 mengunjungi to visit



## LATIHAN 4

Write an object-focus sentence, using the auxiliary *akan*, to describe what is happening or what will or may happen to each of the objects shown below. Remember that you must use a transitive verb for this. Start your sentences with the words provided.

### KOSAK

keranja  
 menerima  
 menyuri

pulang  
 tukang

d

ions  
ay to  
ial

verb

Example:

**Bunga ini ...**

**Bunga ini akan saya beli.**

Literally: This flower I will buy → I will buy this flower.

- 1 Kotak emas itu ...
- 2 Siswa dari Indonesia iu ...
- 3 Telephon genggam ini ...
- 4 Tugas itu ...
- 5 Tiket pesawat terbang ini ...

### Questions in object-focus using *apa yang* and *siapa yang*

The object-focus construction can also be used in interrogative sentences. Rather than asking a question in subject-focus, we can use an object-focus construction starting with **Apa yang ...?** (What is it that ...?) if the object is inanimate, or **Siapa yang ...?** (Who is it that ...?) if the object is a person. In the following examples, the object is underlined.

#### FIRST PERSON SUBJECT

- Statement: **Saya memasak nasi.**  
 Question in subject-focus: **Saya memasak apa?**  
 Question in object-focus: **Apa yang saya masak?**

#### SECOND PERSON SUBJECT

- Statement: **Saudara akan membeli mobil.**  
 Question in subject-focus: **Saudara akan membeli apa?**  
 Question in object-focus: **Apa yang akan Saudara beli?**

#### THIRD PERSON SUBJECT

- Statement: **Mereka menelepon teman saya.**  
 Question in subject-focus: **Mereka menelepon siapa?**  
 Question in object-focus: **Siapa yang mereka telpon?  
Siapa yang ditelepon (oleh) mereka?**



### LATIHAN 5

Turn the following statements into object-focus questions by using either **Apa yang ...?** or **Siapa yang ...?**. The object in each sentence is underlined.

- 1 Kami makan nasi setiap hari.
- 2 Bu Siti membawa keranjang.
- 3 Mereka membuat majalah dinding sekolah.
- 4 Saya akan menelepon Toni.
- 5 Anda akan menerima hadia besar.

#### KOSAKATA

- keranjang** basket  
**menerima** to receive  
**menyuruh** to ask somebody to do something  
**pulang** to go home  
**tukang becak** rickshaw driver

ibe  
ects  
his.

- 6 Pak Totok menjual buah-buahan di pasar.  
 7 Rita dan Dani memanggil tukang becak itu.  
 8 Saya suka menonton film horor.  
 9 Guru menyuruh murid-murid pulang.  
 10 Anak-anak mencuri mangga di kebun Bu Rini.
- 

### Object-focus with unmentioned subject

Many object-focus sentences appear without the subject. This is because the subject is either known, assumed, non-specific (for example, someone, something) or not so important as to warrant a mention.

<b>Mobil saya</b>	<b>dicuri.</b>
Object	Verb
My car	was stolen.

In this example, we know that someone stole the car, but the person is not identified. What is important in this sentence is the fact that the car was stolen, not so much who stole it.

Object-focus with no subject usually takes the *di-* form (third person, Variation A) and is often found in news reports and advertisements. Here are some real examples from Indonesian newspapers.

#### News headlines:

**500 orang dikabarkan tewas dalam gempa bumi itu.**  
 500 people are reported dead in that earthquake.

**Penjahat mati didor di angkutan umum**  
 Criminal shot dead in public transport

#### Classified advertisements:

**Rumah dijual**  
 Literally: House to be sold → House for sale

**Mobil dijual**  
 Literally: Car to be sold → Car for sale



## LATIHAN 6

Below are some titles of classified advertisements and some news headlines from Indonesian newspapers. Find out what they mean in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

#### Classified advertisements:

- 1 Rumah dikontrakkan
- 2 Tanah dijual
- 3 Toko disewakan
- 4 Mobil dicari

#### News headlines:

- 5 Penculik anak divonis 18 bulan
- 6 31 Truk kayu ilegal ditangkap
- 7 Anak perwira digebuki

- 8 Penyelundup narkoba diperiksa Rabu  
9 Penduduk dipersenjatai dan disebar  
10 Pemilik toko mati ditusuk



## LATIHAN 7

Here are descriptions of two Indonesian spices—**pala** (nutmeg) and **kemiri** (candle nuts) — containing object-focus sentences, from the recipe book *Masakan Indonesia*. Both of these spices are used widely in Indonesian cooking. Translate the descriptions into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.



### Pala dan Bunga Pala

Biji pala dibungkus kulit yang keras dan dibalut oleh bunga pala yang menyerupai jala kemerahan. Bunga maupun bijinya dikeringkan. Aroma bunga lebih halus dari pada biji, dibeli dan dipakai secara utuh atau dihaluskan.



### Kemiri

Bentuk bulat dan berwarna kuning muda, rasanya gurih. Sebelum digunakan sebaiknya disangrai atau digoreng lebih dulu supaya bau langu dan racunnya hilang. Kemiri dapat digantikan oleh Macadamia yang tumbuh di Hawaii (harganya cukup mahal). Kacang mete goreng atau kenari juga bisa digunakan sebagai pengganti.

Yasa Boga, *Masakan Indonesia*, PT Gramedia Pustaka Utama, 1997, p. 17



## LATIHAN 8

Look at each of the following two sets of pictures. Picture B shows that some things have been done to the objects in Picture A. Work in pairs to ask and answer questions in Indonesian about the pictures before and after the changes. Use the *di-* object-focus construction for the answers.

Example:

**A: Bagaimana roti ini?**

How's this bread?

**B: Belum diiris.**

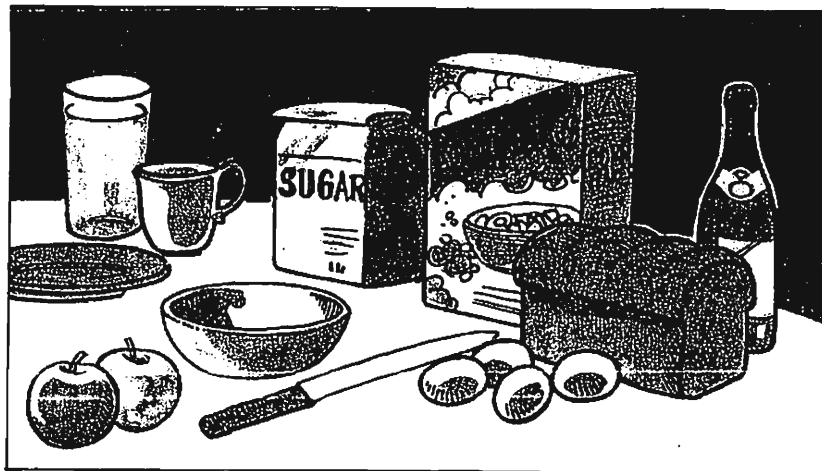
Not yet sliced.

or

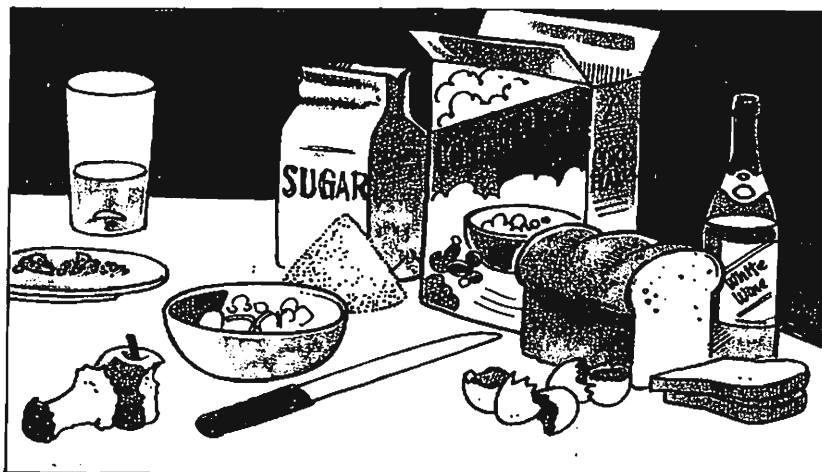
**Sudah diiris.**

Already sliced.

### 1 Picture A



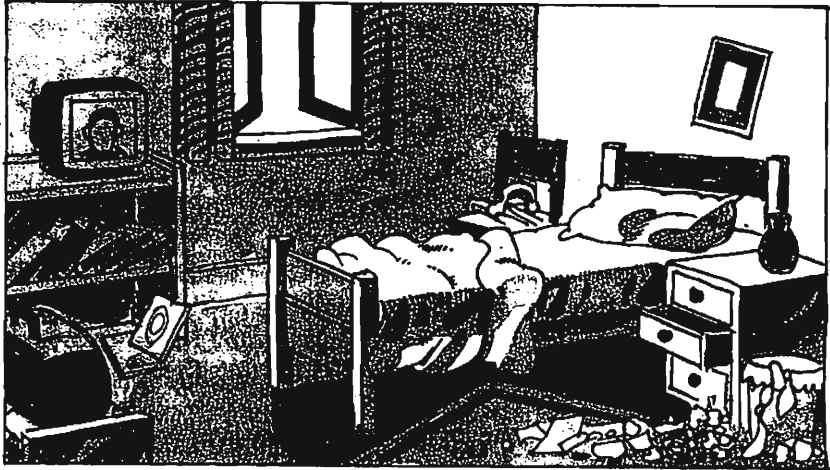
### Picture B



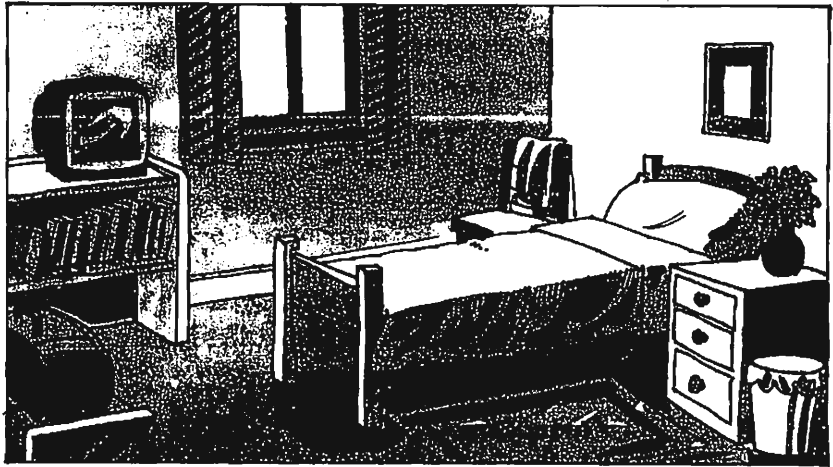


vs the  
pair  
e an  
swers.

2 Picture A



Picture B



Summary

- Subject-focus and object-focus are about what it is in the sentence that becomes the focus of our attention.
- Simple subject-focus consists of: Subject – Transitive verb – Object.
- We can add auxiliary verbs, prepositional phrases and adverbs to the sentence to make it more interesting.
- To transform subject-focus into object-focus, determine first whether the subject is first, second or third person, then follow the rules:
  - First person:                   Object – Subject – Verb
  - Second person:                Object – Subject – Verb
  - Third person:                 Object – **di-** Verb – (**oleh**) Subject  
  Object – Subject – Verb (if subject is pronoun)
- Remember that it is only the third person that gets the **di-** form.
- Many object-focus sentences do not have a subject. This is because the subject is known by context, assumed, non-specific or not very important.

# 10

## Uses of *-nya*

In this chapter we will learn about *-nya* in examples like these:

**Anjingnya** bernama Jack.  
**Bagusnya!**  
**Airnya** panas!

The suffix *-nya* appears very often in spoken and written Indonesian. To make sense, *-nya* has to be attached to another word, which can be a noun, an adjective or a verb.

### To show possession

When attached to a noun or noun phrase, *-nya* can indicate something that belongs to a third person (which, in spite of its name, can include things that are not people).

The suffix *-nya* is equivalent to the English 'his', 'her/hers' or 'its'; for example, 'her dog', 'his house', 'its tail'.

In this function, *-nya* replaces the pronoun *dia*, proper name referring to the third person or any noun phrase indicating a person, as shown in the following examples.

Ini buku <u>dia</u>	→	Ini bukunya.
Itu kantor <u>Bu Tini</u>	→	Itu kantornya.
Ini kamar <u>anak saya</u>	→	Ini kamarnya.

### As equivalent of 'the'

The suffix *-nya* can also function as a *definite article*; that is, it can be used to refer to something already known or understood from context. In English, this is shown by the word 'the'.

**Hawanya** panas sekali hari ini.  
The weather is very hot today.

**Jangan lupa mengembalikan bukunya** ya.  
Don't forget to return the book, will you?

**Ayo, bersihkan mobilnya.**

Come on, clean the car.

**Silakan makan kuenya!**

Please eat the cake!

## Exclamation

We can also attach **-nya** to an adjective to make an exclamatory remark about something. In a sentence, this exclamation usually comes before the noun or noun phrase that we exclaim about. For example, if we want to say how beautiful a flower is, then the word 'beautiful' comes first and 'flower' follows.

**Cantiknya**    **bunga ini!**  
Adjective + *nya*    Noun phrase  
How beautiful    this flower is!

**Sulitnya**    **ujian itu!**  
Adjective + *nya*    Noun phrase  
How difficult    the exam was!

**Nakalnya**    **anak ini!**  
Adjective + *nya*    Noun phrase  
How naughty    this child is!

We can, of course, use an exclamation to pay someone a compliment or to express surprise, exasperation, a sense of wonder and so on. Often people do not bother to mention the noun phrase because what they are exclaiming about is understood from context.

**Enaknya!**  
How delicious! (for example, referring to food)

**Dinginnya!**  
So cold! (for example, referring to the weather)

We can also add another exclamatory word, such as **aduh**, **wah** or **ampun**, in front of the adjective to give the exclamation more force.

**Aduh, pelitnya!**  
My goodness, how scungy!

**Wah, baunya!**  
Literally: Wow, the smell! (for example, referring to fragrant or bad smell)  
→ Wow, the smells nice! or Oh, that stinks!

**Ampun, nakalnya!**  
My goodness, so naughty! (for example, referring to a child's behaviour)



## LATIHAN 1

Make up an exclamatory expression using **-nya** for each of the following situations. Add an exclamatory word in front of your adjective to reinforce it. You can mention the noun phrase after the adjective, if you wish. The adjectives are underlined to help you.

- 1 It is sweltering today. What might you say to your friend?
- 2 You see images of starving children on television and are struck by how thin the children are. What might you say?
- 3 You want to buy a handbag, but when you start looking in shops, you find that handbags are more expensive than you had expected. What might you say?
- 4 You go to your friend's dinner party, which you thought would be attended by a few people. When you arrive, you find that there are many more people than you had anticipated. What would you say?
- 5 When you are strolling down the street near your house one evening, you see a very tall tree that you never noticed before. You are struck by how tall the tree is. What would you say?

Here are some common exclamatory expressions in Indonesian. Give their equivalents in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 6 Aduh, lucunya boneka itu!
- 7 Wah, tebalnya buku ini!
- 8 Ampun, kerasnya musik itu!
- 9 Ampun, dinginnya hari ini!
- 10 Aduh, canggihnya teknologi baru itu!

## To be polite

In many instances, Indonesian speakers avoid saying 'you' or 'your' to the person to whom they are speaking, out of politeness. Instead, **-nya** is often preferred, which may seem strange to English speakers, since it sounds like they are referring to something belonging to someone else. For instance, a very common way of asking 'What is your name?' is **Siapa namanya?**, which literally means 'What is the name?'. Likewise, to ask how old someone is, **-nya** is commonly used: **Berapa umurnya?**

**Boleh saya pinjam bukunya?**

Literally: May I borrow the book?  
→ May I borrow your book?

**Mobilnya bagus sekali!**

Literally: The car is very beautiful!  
→ Your car is very beautiful!

**Sepatunya dibeli di mana?**

Literally: The shoes, where were they bought?  
→ Where did you buy your shoes?



## LATIHAN 2

The following are things that people often say or ask in English. Translate them into Indonesian, using **-nya** to be polite. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 I really like your house.
- 2 Where is your car?
- 3 When is your exam?
- 4 What is your mother's name?
- 5 How old is your dog?
- 6 What is your occupation?
- 7 Your drawing is beautiful.
- 8 Your watch is slow.
- 9 What is your problem?
- 10 Where did you buy your shoes?



### LATIHAN 3

Interview three of your friends in Indonesian, asking the following questions with *-nya*. Record their responses in a table as shown.

#### KOSAKATA

hari ulang tahun  
 birthday  
 kesukaan  
 favourite  
 saudara  
 sibling

PERTANYAAN	TEMAN 1	TEMAN 2	TEMAN 3
1. Siapa nama rumahnya?			
2. Dimana mobilnya?			
3. Kapan tanggal lahirnya?			
4. Siapa nama ibunya?			
5. Siapa nama baraknya?			
6. Siapa nama saudaranya?			
7. Siapa nama saudara saudaranya?			
8. Apa hobi kesukannya?			
9. Berapa nomor teleponnya?			
10. Dimana?			

### In topic-comment sentences

*Topic-comment* sentences are those in which the subject is the *topic* of the sentence (what the sentence is about) and it comes first, while what follows is the *comment* about that topic. In speech, there is usually a short pause between the topic and the comment. This is not so evident in writing.

**Bu Rita                      anaknya lima.**

*Topic                              Comment*

Literally: (As for) Bu Rita, her children are five.

→ Bu Rita has five children.

The suffix *-nya* is attached to the noun or noun phrase that belongs to the topic. In the example above, the children belong to Bu Rita; therefore, *-nya* is attached to **anak**.

**Sekolah kami      perpustakaannya besar.**

*Topic                              Comment*

Literally: (As for) our school, its library is big.

→ Our school has a big library.

Teman saya      jaketnya merah.

Topic                      Comment

Literally: (As for) my friend, his/her jacket is red.

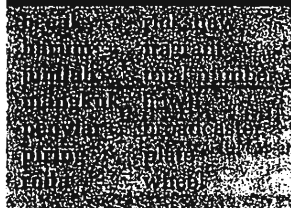
→ My friend is wearing a red jacket.



## LATIHAN 4

Match each of the topics in the left column with the comment in the right column.

### KOSAKATA



- |                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 CD saya                     | a baunya harum              |
| 2 Piring dan mangkuk ibu saya | b rodanya tiga              |
| 3 Roti dari toko itu          | c jumlahnya banyak          |
| 4 Universitas itu             | d penduduknya banyak sekali |
| 5 Program televisi itu        | e mahasiswanya banyak       |
| 6 Bapak teman saya            | f namanya 'Sesame Street'   |
| 7 Indonesia                   | g warnanya putih            |
| 8 Becak                       | h namanya James             |
| 9 Bunga itu                   | i mobilnya Mazda            |
| 10 Penyiar radio itu          | j rasanya enak              |



## LATIHAN 5

Write a topic-comment sentence in Indonesian on each of the following topics. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Their computer
- 2 My teacher's table
- 3 Her hat
- 4 That tree
- 5 That giraffe

## To form abstract nouns

When attached to a verb or adjective **-nya** turns the word into an abstract noun. This is why in this function **-nya** is called a *nominaliser*. The process of forming the abstract noun is called *nominalisation*. In the following example, the verb **ditutup** (to be closed, shut down) in sentence **a** is turned into the noun **ditutupnya** (the closure of) in sentence **b**.

- a Bank itu ditutup oleh pemerintah bulan lalu.**  
That bank was shut down by the government last month.
- b Ditutupnya bank itu menyebabkan kemarahan banyak orang.**  
The closure of that bank caused anger in a lot of people.

Here are more examples of nominalisation of verbs.

- a Pembunuhan itu terjadi kemarin sore.**  
That murder happened yesterday afternoon.

- b **Terjadinya** pembunuhan itu membuat polisi sibuk.  
The taking place of (occurrence) of that murder made the police busy.
- a **Bapak saya pergi ke Mekah untuk naik haji.**  
My father went to Mecca for a pilgrimage.
- b **Perginya** bapak saya ke Mekah adalah untuk naik haji.  
The departure of my father to Mecca is for a pilgrimage.

Here are some examples of nominalisation of adjectives.

- a **Penghasilan mereka besar.**  
Their income is high (literally 'large').
- b **Besarnya** penghasilan mereka memungkinkan mereka untuk membeli rumah mahal.  
The high level (literally 'the largeness') of their income enabled them to buy an expensive house.



## LATIHAN 6

Turn the underlined verbs and adjectives in each of the following sentences into abstract nouns by writing a new sentence with similar information, using the nominalised word at the beginning of your sentence.

Example:

**Swalayan itu dibuka 24 jam.**

The supermarket is open twenty-four hours.

**Dibukanya swalayan itu 24 jam membuat orang senang berbelanja di sana.**

The opening of the supermarket for twenty-four hours makes people enjoy shopping there.

- 1 Sekolah itu dibuka oleh Menteri Pendidikan.  
Dibukanya ...
- 2 Banyak orang hadir di pertemuan itu.  
Hadirnya ...
- 3 Ribuan orang terbunuh dalam insiden berdarah itu.  
Terbunuhnya ...
- 4 Target penjualan bulan ini sudah tercapai.  
Tercapainya ...
- 5 Ruangan itu sangat besar.  
Besarnya ...

## Summary

The suffix **-nya** has several uses:

- To show possession ('his', 'her/hers' or 'its')
- In topic-comment sentences, attached to the word in the comment part
- As a definite article, like 'the' in English
- As an exclamatory marker: 'How ...!' 'What a/an ...!'
- As a nominaliser: to form an abstract noun from a verb or adjective
- To be polite by avoiding saying 'you' or 'your'



## Ways to Say 'Because'

In this chapter we look at five ways to say 'because' in Indonesian.

- (oleh) karena
- (oleh) sebab
- gara-gara
- mentang-mentang
- lantaran

You may wonder why there are so many words to express the same thing. The answer is, although all of those words mean 'because', they differ in terms of:

- where they can occur in a sentence
- where they come from
- their degree of formality

Remember that English also has different words, such as 'because', 'for' and 'since'.

He failed the test because he studied the wrong chapters.  
They didn't do it for fear of hurting her.  
I didn't include you since you didn't say anything.

Let us now look at the Indonesian words in turn.

### (Oleh) karena

**Karena** is neutral in terms of formality, so it is suitable for any situation. However, sometimes people add **oleh** in front of it. When they do that, the expression sounds a little more formal.

**Karena** can be placed either at the beginning or middle of a sentence.

**Adik saya tidak mau makan karena mulutnya sakit.**  
My younger brother/sister doesn't want to eat because his/her mouth is sore.

**Karena gaji mereka tidak dinaikkan, para pekerja pabrik itu marah.**  
Because their wage was not increased, the workers of that factory were angry.

To say 'because of that', simply add **itu** after **karena**.





Tahun lalu terjadi gempa bumi di sana, **(oleh) karena itu** banyak orang tewas.

Last year there was an earthquake there; because of that many people died.

## **(Oleh) sebab**

**Sebab** is also neutral in terms of formality and is often preceded by **oleh** (which is written in parentheses below to show that it is optional). The use of **oleh** makes the expression a little more formal.

**Sebab** cannot appear at the beginning of a sentence.

**Saya membawa payung sebab kelihatannya akan hujan.**

I'm carrying an umbrella because it looks like (it) will rain.

**Toko-toko mulai memberikan diskon sebab hari Natal sudah dekat.**

Shops begin to give discounts because Christmas is coming.

We can also add **itu** in the same way we do with **karena**.

**Bayi itu lahir prematur; (oleh) sebab itu dia harus tinggal di rumah sakit selama tiga bulan pertama.**

The baby was born premature; because of that he/she had to stay at the hospital for the first three months.

## **Gara-gara**

This word comes from the Javanese word **goro-goro**. **Gara-gara** means 'because' in the sense of 'as a result of'.

**Gara-gara** can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Gara-gara kamu, saya dimarahi bapak.**

Literally: As a result of your doing, I was scolded by father.

→ Because of you, I was scolded by father.

**Hutan itu terbakar gara-gara orang seenaknya membuang puntung rokok.**

The forest was burnt down as a result of someone carelessly throwing away cigarette butts.

## **Mentang-mentang**

This reduplicated word means 'just because'. However, unlike its translation in English, **mentang-mentang** has a negative connotation. It should be placed at the beginning of a sentence.

**Mentang-mentang kaya, dia sombong.**

Just because (he/she) is wealthy, he/she is arrogant.

Tahun lalu terjadi gempa bumi di sana, **(oleh)** karena itu banyak orang tewas.

Last year there was an earthquake there; because of that many people died.

## **(Oleh) sebab**

**Sebab** is also neutral in terms of formality and is often preceded by **oleh** (which is written in parentheses below to show that it is optional). The use of **oleh** makes the expression a little more formal.

**Sebab** cannot appear at the beginning of a sentence.

**Saya membawa payung sebab kelihatannya akan hujan.**

I'm carrying an umbrella because it looks like (it) will rain.

**Toko-toko mulai memberikan diskon sebab hari Natal sudah dekat.**

Shops begin to give discounts because Christmas is coming.

We can also add **itu** in the same way we do with **karena**.

**Bayi itu lahir prematur; **(oleh)** sebab itu dia harus tinggal di rumah sakit selama tiga bulan pertama.**

The baby was born premature; because of that he/she had to stay at the hospital for the first three months.

## **Gara-gara**

This word comes from the Javanese word **goro-goro**. **Gara-gara** means 'because' in the sense of 'as a result of'.

**Gara-gara** can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Gara-gara kamu, saya dimarahi bapak.**

Literally: As a result of your doing, I was scolded by father.

→ Because of you, I was scolded by father.

**Hutan itu terbakar gara-gara orang seenaknya membuang puntung rokok.**

The forest was burnt down as a result of someone carelessly throwing away cigarette butts.

## **Mentang-mentang**

This reduplicated word means 'just because'. However, unlike its translation in English, **mentang-mentang** has a negative connotation. It should be placed at the beginning of a sentence.

**Mentang-mentang kaya, dia sombong.**

Just because (he/she) is wealthy, he/she is arrogant.

**Mentang-mentang** merasa pintar, mahasiswa itu tidak mau belajar.  
Just because (he/she) feels (he/she is) smart, that university student does not want to study.

## Lantaran

This word is informal and is therefore inappropriate for use in formal situations; for example, with your teacher in class. You may wish to use it with your friends instead.

Lantaran can be placed either at the beginning or middle of a sentence.

Lantaran banyak PR (pekerjaan rumah), saya tidak bisa ke bioskop.  
Because (I have) a lot of homework, I can't go to the movies.

Piring dan mangkuk pecah semua lantaran dia ceroboh.  
 Plates and bowls broke because he/she was careless.

## LATIHAN 1

Complete the sentences below with the 'because' words above. Bear in mind whether the word can occur at the beginning or middle of a sentence (or both).

- 1 Pak Sabirin terkena kanker paru-paru \_\_\_\_\_ merokok terlalu banyak.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ bisnisnya bangkrut, pemilik toko itu tidak bisa membayar hutangnya.
- 3 Pencuri itu pingsan \_\_\_\_\_ dipukuli orang sekampung.
- 4 Ekonomi Indonesia memburuk \_\_\_\_\_ situasi politik yang tidak stabil.
- 5 Bu Khatijah menangis sedih \_\_\_\_\_ rumahnya kebanjiran.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ sudah punya pacar, sekarang teman saya tidak pernah menelepon lagi.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ ngebut, dia ditangkap polisi.
- 8 Tanaman itu subur \_\_\_\_\_ sering diberi pupuk kandang.
- 9 Anak itu menderita ruam-ruam pada punggungnya \_\_\_\_\_ cuaca yang sangat panas.
- 10 Budi muntah-muntah \_\_\_\_\_ keracunan makanan.

## LATIHAN 2

Write sentences using the appropriate 'because' words for the following situations. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 You are late to class because you got up late this morning. What do you say to your teacher?

### KOSAKATA

banjir	to flood
buluh	bamboo
kebanjiran	flood
memburuk	to become bad, worsen
menderita	to suffer (from)
muntah-muntah	to vomit
ngebut	to speed
pacar	girlfriend/boyfriend
paru-paru	lungs
pingsan	unconscious
pupuk kandang	manure
ruam-ruam	rash
subur	fertile
terkena	to be struck by, to contract (disease/illness)

- 2 You could not come to your friend's party because you had to work. What do you say to your friend?
- 3 Your father asks you why you have not washed your clothes. Say that you are simply lazy.
- 4 Your friend rings to ask why you did not turn up to play tennis yesterday. Apologise and tell her that you had to take your younger sister to the dentist.
- 5 You go to the supermarket to buy groceries. At the checkout you realise that you forgot to bring your wallet. What do you say to the checkout person?

Translate the following sentences into Indonesian using the 'because' words discussed in this chapter. To help you, the Indonesian equivalents of the underlined words are given in parentheses.

- 6 I was annoyed with him because he lost my calculator. (menghilangkan)
- 7 Mira missed the plane because her taxi came late. (ketinggalan)
- 8 Because of you, our Maths teacher was angry with me. (marah)
- 9 Because of the prolonged conflict in that region, many people died. (berkepanjangan)
- 10 Just because you have money, you cannot treat other people like that. (memperlakukan)



### LATIHAN 3

Work in pairs. Prepare five questions related to what you know about your partner's likes and dislikes or about what he or she wears or uses. Start your questions with **mengapa** (why)—or **kenapa**, if you want to be informal. Take turns interviewing each other.

Example:

**Mengapa kamu suka apel?**

Why do you like apples?

**Karena menyehatkan dan rasanya enak.**

Because (they are) healthy and taste good.

### Summary

Ways of saying 'because':

- **(Oleh) karena**: neutral and can be used for any situation; can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence
- **(Oleh) sebab**: neutral; cannot be placed at the beginning of the sentence
- **Gara-gara**: from Javanese **goro-goro**; means 'as a result of'; can occur either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence
- **Lantaran**: for informal use; can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence



## Ways to Say 'If'

### If

There are various ways to say 'if' in Indonesian, each differing in terms of formality and the likelihood of the event happening. These are called *conditionals*.

In this chapter we look at five common ways to say 'if'.

- kalau
- jika
- (apa)bila
- seumpama(nya)
- seandainya

#### **Kalau**

**Kalau** is the common and most neutral way of saying 'if'. That is, it is neither too formal nor informal, so we can use it for any situation. It can be placed at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Kalau hujan, kita tidak akan pergi.**

If it rains, we will not go.

**Saya tidak mau ikut kalau kamu tidak menjemput saya.**

I won't come along if you don't pick me up.

**Jangan parkir mobil di situ kalau tidak mau didenda.**

Don't park your car there if (you) don't want to be fined.

#### **Jika and (apa)bila**

**Jika** and **(apa)bila** are more formal or poetic than **kalau**. They mean the same thing, but you probably would not want to use them with friends. These words are more appropriate in writing, songs or public announcements. As with **kalau**, we can place **jika** and **(apa)bila** at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence. **Apabila** is often shortened into **bila**, which is why **apa** is shown in parentheses.



**Jika** ada rejeki, kami ingin mengunjungi Singapura.

If we had some good fortune, we would like to visit Singapore.

Kami akan naik haji tahun depan **apa(bila)** tidak ada aral melintang.

We will go on a pilgrimage to Mecca next year if everything goes well (literally: if there are no obstacles).

Jangan membuka email itu **jika** tidak mau komputer anda terserang virus.

Don't open that e-mail if (you) don't want your computer to be affected by the virus.



## LATIHAN 1

Complete the following sentences. Each sentence contains **kalau**, **jika** or **(apa)bila**. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

### KOSAKATA

cuaca	weather
keras-keras	loudly
lapar	hungry
lulus ujian	to pass an exam
mogok	to break down

- 1 Jika cuaca baik, ...
- 2 Kalau mobil anda mogok, ...
- 3 Bila gigi anda sakit, ...
- 4 Jika tidak makan pagi, ...
- 5 Kalau saya punya uang, ...
- 6 Kalau lulus ujian, ...
- 7 Jika anda berbicara keras-keras, ...
- 8 Jika tidak boleh menonton televisi, ...
- 9 Apabila tidak boleh pergi, ...
- 10 Kalau kamu lapar, ...

### Seumpama(nya)

**Seumpama(nya)** is used to say 'if' when we know that the likelihood of the event happening is not great. Like **kalau**, **jika** and **(apa)bila**, **seumpama** can be placed at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence. The suffix **-nya** is optional.

**Seumpama** dia datang, tolong beritahu saya.

If she comes, please let me know.

(I don't think she will come, but if she does, please tell me.)

Kamu akan bilang apa **seumpama** dia marah?

What will you say if he gets angry?

(I don't think he will get angry, but if he does, what will you say?)



### Note

Sometimes people add two 'if' words together for emphasis. **Seumpama** combines well with **kalau**, since both are neutral in terms of formality.

**Kalau seumpama(nya) ...**

### Seandainya

**Seandainya** is similar to **seumpama**, but it is more formal and is usually used when we want to say that there is little likelihood of the event happening. **Seandainya** can be placed at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Seandainya** saya milyuner, saya akan membeli kapal pesiar yang mewah.

If I were a millionaire, I would buy a luxury yacht.

**Kami akan berpesta besar seandainya kami menang lotre.**

We would have a big party if we won the lottery.



**Note**

As with **seumpama(nya)**, people often add **seandainya** with **jika** or **(apa)bila**. These words are compatible, since both are rather formal.

**Jika seandainya ...**

**(Apa)bila seandainya ...**



## LATIHAN 2

The following are the lyrics of a popular song written by Indonesian songwriter and singer Melly Goeslaw. The song contains two of the 'if' words: **jika** and **seumpama**. Translate the song into English. Some of the vocabulary is given below; however, you may need your teacher's help in interpreting the song.

### KOSAKATA

beda	different
berpisah	to part
ber	swearing
aku	I
mu	you
Ande	you
jumpa	to meet; see
	someone
'kan (from akan)	will
kembali	to return
	get back
	together
keputusan	decision
kujalani	I will do it
kurasa	I feel
memang	indeed
mulut	mouth
niat	intention
puji	compliment
santun kata	the
	words
segan	reluctance
teringat	to remember
terpikir	to occur to
	me
terucap	uttered
'tuk (from untuk)	for, to

**Jika**

*by Melly Goeslaw and Ari Lasso*

Jika teringat tentang dikau  
 Jauh di mata dekat di hati  
 Sempat terpikir 'tuk kembali  
 Walau beda akan kujalani  
 Tak ada niat untuk selamanya pergi.

Jika teringat tentang dikau  
 Jauh di mata dekat di hati  
 Apakah sama yang kurasa  
 Ingin jumpa walau ada segan  
 Tak ada niat untuk berpisah denganmu.

Jika memang masih bisa mulutku berbicara  
 Santun kata yang ingin terucap  
 'Kan kudengar caci dan puji dirimu padaku  
 Kita masih muda dalam mencari keputusan  
 Maafkan daku ingin kembali  
Seumpama ada jalan 'tuk kembali.

### If ... then ...

- kalau ... maka
- jika ... maka
- (apa)bila ... maka
- seumpama(nya) ... maka
- seandainya ... maka

ing

To say 'if ..., then ...', we simply add **maka** after the 'if' word.

**Kalau/jika/(apa)bila kamu seperti itu, maka saya tidak mau pergi denganmu.**

If you're like that, then I don't want to go with you.

**Seumpama(nya)/seandainya hal itu terjadi, maka kami akan segera bertindak.**

If that happened, then we would immediately take action.



### Handy expression

To say 'if so' or 'if that's the case', we can say **kalau begitu** or, if we want to sound formal, **jika/(apa)bila demikian**.

**Kalau begitu, saya pulang sekarang.**

If so, I'm going home now.

**Jika/(apa)bila demikian, kami pulang sekarang.**

If that's the case, we're going home now.

To say 'if you don't mind':

**Kalau (kamu/anda/Bapak/Ibu) tidak keberatan.**

sian  
the 'if'  
ne of  
her's

## If only

**Kalau saja ...**

**Jika saja ...**

**(apa)bila saja ...**

**seumpama(nya) saja ...**

**seandainya saja ...**

To say 'if only', we add **saja** to **kalau**, **jika**, **seumpama(nya)** and **seandainya**.

**Kalau saja kamu datang sore itu!**

If only you came that afternoon!

**Jika/(apa)bila saja polisi cepat menangkap pencuri itu!**

If only the police quickly captured that thief!

**Seumpama(nya) saja dia tidak menabrak pohon itu.**

If only he/she didn't hit that tree!

**Seandainya saja gempa bumi itu tidak terjadi!**

If only that earthquake didn't happen!



## What if ...?

- **bagaimana kalau**
- **bagaimana jika**
- **bagaimana (apa)bila**
- **bagaimana seumpama(nya)**
- **bagaimana seandainya**

To say 'What if ...?', we add *bagaimana* in front of the four 'if' words.

**Bagaimana kalau hujan?**

What if it rains?

**Bagaimana jika/(apa)bila kami kalah?**

What if we lose?

**Bagaimana seumpama kamu dapat hadiah tiket ke Bali pulang-pergi?**

What if you get a gift of a return ticket to Bali?

**Bagaimana seandainya kamu melihat hantu itu?**

What if you see that ghost?



## LATIHAN 3

Say the following sentences in Indonesian. Choose the appropriate 'if' word for the situation and the person to whom you are talking.

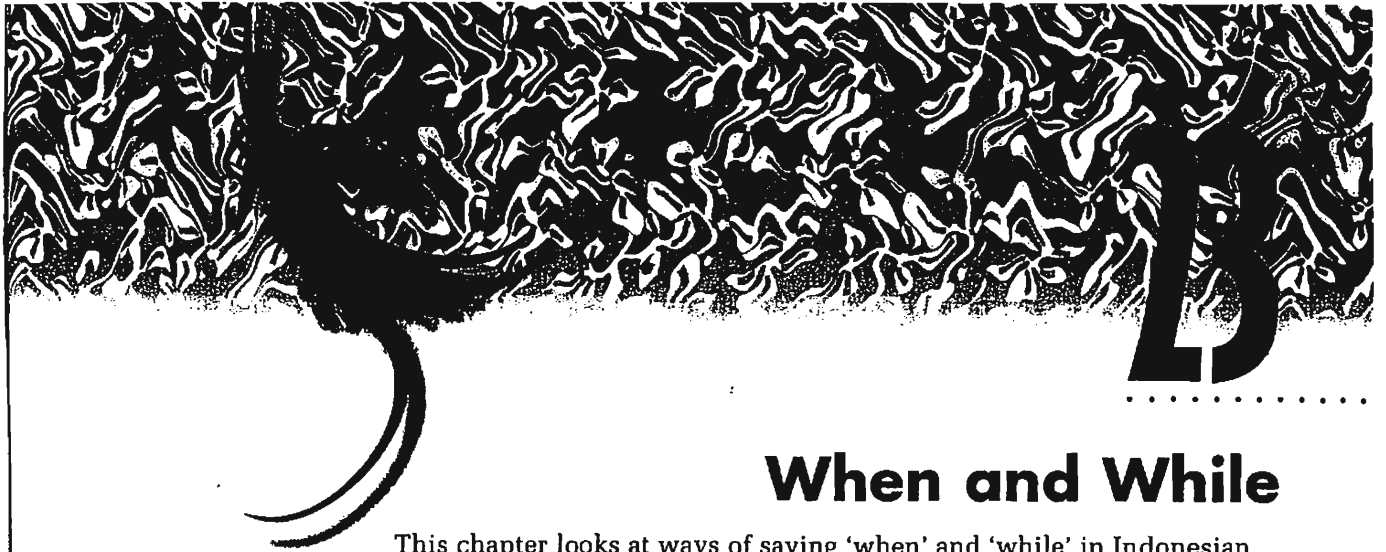
- 1 Ask your friend: 'What if you're that teacher?'
- 2 Ask your teacher: 'Will we play basketball if it rains?'
- 3 Say to a stranger: 'What if I give you a million dollars?'
- 4 Heading for a magazine article: 'What if the world is not round?'
- 5 Say this to the class: 'What if we die tomorrow?'

Translate the following sentences into Indonesian. The Indonesian equivalents of the underlined words are given in parentheses.

- 6 If only they could lend us some money, we would not be this miserable. (*sengsara*)
- 7 What if she doesn't love you any more?
- 8 What if you could travel overseas tomorrow? (*pergi ke luar negeri*)
- 9 What if they don't want you to go with them?
- 10 If only I got a scholarship, I could study in Indonesia. (*beasiswa*)

## Summary

- Five ways of saying 'if':
  - Kalau**: neutral; can be used in any situation
  - Jika/(apa)bila**: more formal or poetic; appropriate for writing or public announcements
  - Seumpama(nya)**: neutral; less likelihood of event happening
  - Seandainya**: formal; less likelihood of event happening
- If ... then: 'if' word ... + **maka**
- If only: 'if' word + **saja**
- What if ...?: **bagaimana** + 'if' word



## When and While

This chapter looks at ways of saying 'when' and 'while' in Indonesian. These words are used to connect one part of a sentence to another.

In grammatical terms, these are called *conjunctions* and in Indonesian we can use the following words.

- **ketika**
- **waktu**
- **sementara**
- **sambil**
- **sedangkan**

### ***Ketika and waktu***

**Ketika** and **waktu** both mean 'when', but **ketika** is a little more formal than **waktu**. These words are used to point to something that either happened in the past or will happen.

**Waktu/ketika saya kecil keluarga saya tinggal di Surabaya.**

When I was little (a child) my family lived in Surabaya.

**Kami sedang tidur waktu/ketika polisi datang ke rumah.**

We were sleeping when the police came to our house.

**Ruth akan menelepon waktu/ketika sampai di Brisbane.**

Ruth will ring when she arrives in Brisbane.



#### **Be careful!**

To use 'when' as a question word (see Chapter 1), use **kapan**.

**Kapan kamu pulang?**

When are you going home?

Never use **kapan** as a conjunction, even though in English it also translates as 'when'. We cannot say, for instance:

- **Saya tinggal di Surabaya kapan saya kecil.**  
I lived in Surabaya when I was little (a child).

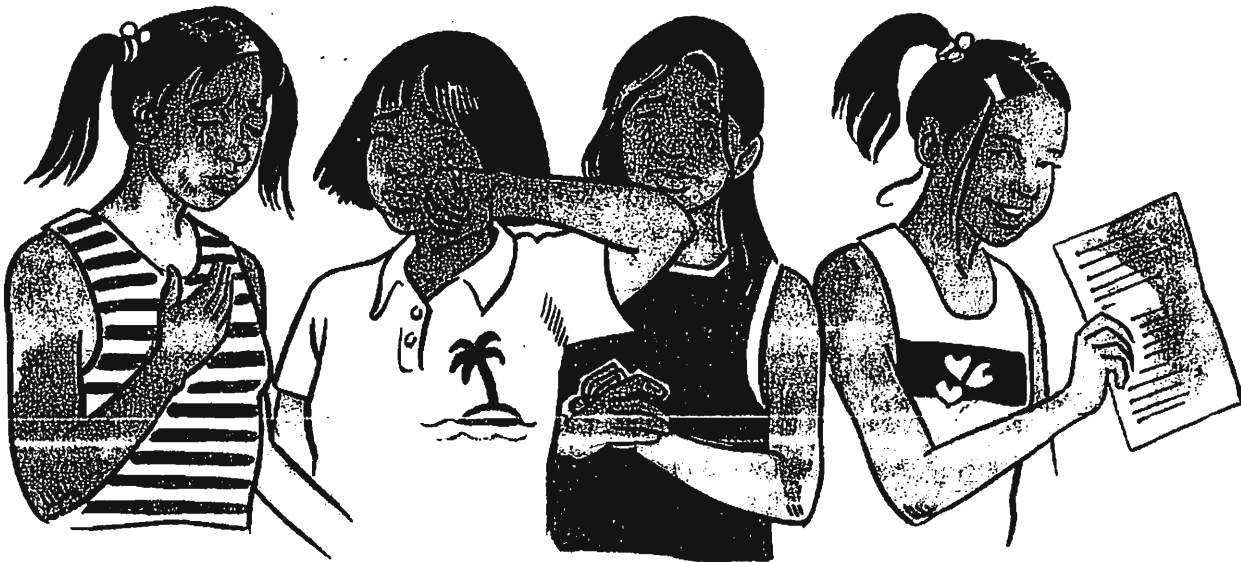
## Sementara

**Sementara** means 'while' in the sense of 'someone does something, while someone else does something else' or 'something happens while something else also happens'.

**Kakak perempuan saya memasak sementara ibu pergi berbelanja.**  
My older sister cooked while my mother went shopping.

**Pada bulan Desember di Eropa turun salju, sementara di Australia cuaca panas.**

In December, in Europe it snows, while in Australia it is hot.



**Tuti tertawa sementara ketiga temannya menangis.**

## Sambil

In contrast to **sementara**, which is used either for different people doing different things at the same time or for different things happening at the same time, **sambil** is used to refer to the same person(s) or animal(s) doing two things at the same time. It can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Rio makan sambil menonton televisi.**  
Rio is eating while watching television.

**Sambil meringkik kuda itu berlari.**  
While neighing the horse ran.



### Handy expression

To say 'to kill two birds with one stone' (to do two things simultaneously) in Indonesian, we would say **sambil menyelam minum air**, which literally means 'while swimming underwater, drink the water'. This expression can also be used to mean 'to take advantage of something else at the same time of doing something'.

## Sedangkan

**Sedangkan** means 'while' or 'whereas, where in fact'. We can use it to contrast two things, such as people, likes and dislikes or qualities.

**Jalan Mawar lebar and bagus, sedangkan jalan Kenanga sempit dan kotor.**

Mawar Street is wide and neat, while Kenanga Street is narrow and dirty.

**Adik saya suka bersepeda, sedangkan kakak saya gemar bersepeda motor.**

My younger sibling likes cycling, while my older one loves riding a motorbike.



## LATIHAN 1

Join the two parts of each sentence using an appropriate 'when' or 'while' word. There may be more than one possible answer for each sentence. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Kulit pisang warnanya kuning \_\_\_\_\_ kulit buah kiwi warnanya coklat.
- 2 Ani berbicara \_\_\_\_\_ menangis.
- 3 John naik bis ke kampus \_\_\_\_\_ Linda bersepeda.
- 4 Lily berasal dari Cina \_\_\_\_\_ Felix dari Nigeria
- 5 Anak kecil itu mandi \_\_\_\_\_ bernyanyi.
- 6 Saya sedang mendengarkan walkman \_\_\_\_\_ ibu saya pulang dari kantor.
- 7 Guru mengoreksi pekerjaan \_\_\_\_\_ murid-murid murid-murid mengerjakan latihan tata bahasa.
- 8 Gaji pegawai tidak naik \_\_\_\_\_ harga bahan pangan terus meningkat.
- 9 Burung-burung beterbangan \_\_\_\_\_ berkicau.
- 10 Kami ke sekolah \_\_\_\_\_ ibu pergi bekerja.



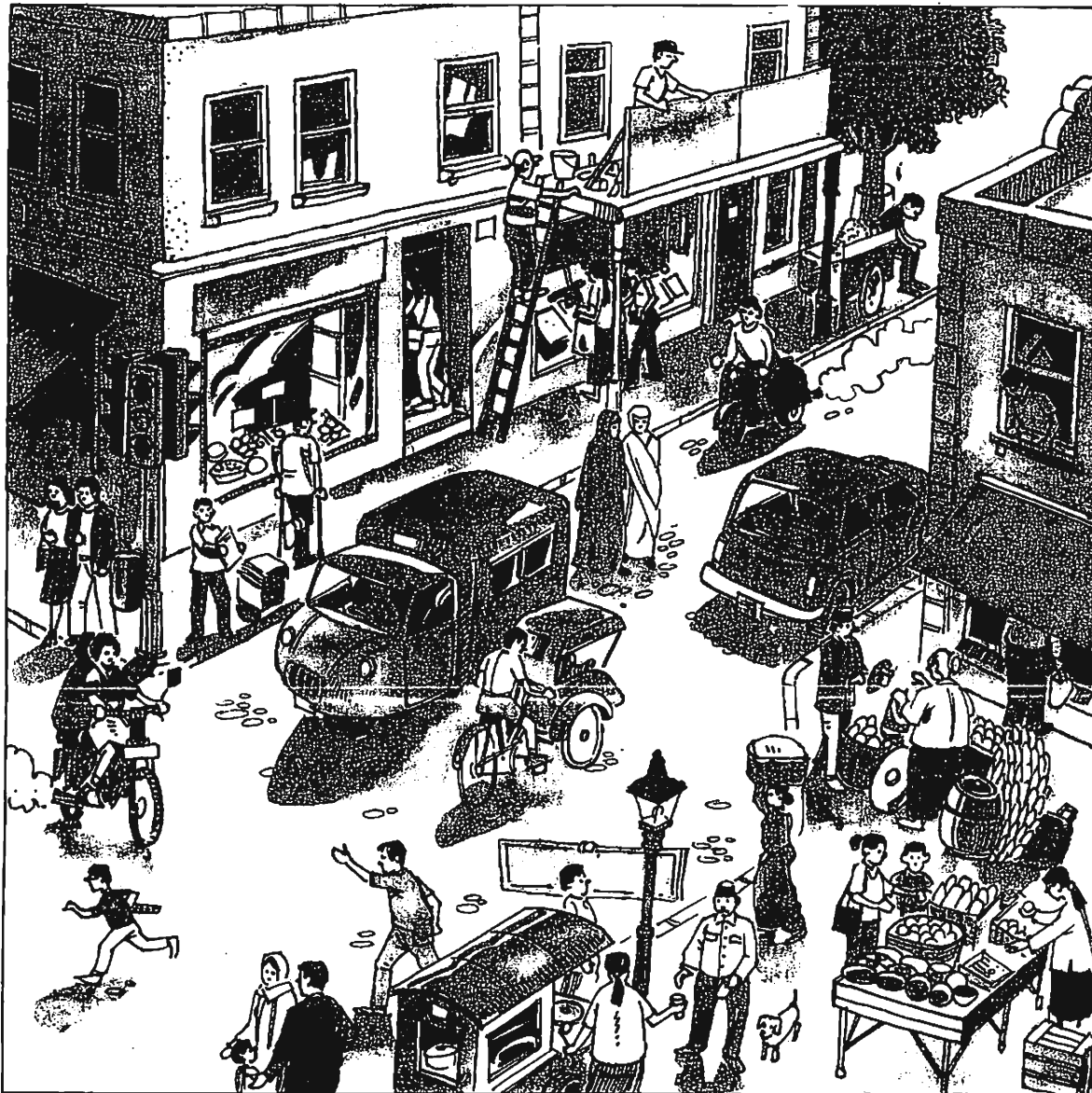
## LATIHAN 2

Look at the following picture of a busy street. Describe what people are doing using **sambil**, **sementara** or **sedangkan**. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Example:

**Nenek ini sedang berjalan, sedangkan anak kecil itu bermain di kolam.**

This grandmother is walking, while the small child is playing in the pond.



## Summary

Ways of saying 'when' and 'while':

- **Ketika** and **waktu**; for something which takes place in the past or future
- **Sementara**; for when two different persons are doing different things at the same time, or when two different things happen at the same time
- **Sambil**; for when someone does two things at the same time
- **Sedangkan**; for contrasting two things



## Although and Not ... But

In this chapter we will learn how to say:

- 'although', 'even though', 'even if', 'although it is so', 'in spite of'
- 'not ... but', 'not only ... but also', 'rather than ... in fact', 'not only ... on the contrary'

### Although, even though

To say 'although' and 'even though' in Indonesian, we can choose between the following words.

- **meski(pun)**
- **walau(pun)**
- **biar(pun)**

The ending **pun** in those three words is shown in parentheses because people often omit it when they speak or write. The omission of **pun** can also make the words sound more poetic, which is why people tend to omit it when writing songs or poetry.

We can place these words either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Meski(pun)** hujan, Rani datang juga ke rumah saya.

Even though it rained, Rani still came to my house.

Dia tetap saja tidak mau belajar **walau(pun)** tahu ujian sudah dekat.

He/she still doesn't want to study, although (he/she) knows the exam is near.

**Biar(pun)** sudah dua kali dipenjara, orang itu masih merampok juga.

Even though twice jailed, that person still robs.

### Even if

**Meski(pun)**, **walau(pun)** and **biar(pun)** can also mean 'even if', depending on what we intend to say.

**Meski(pun)** hujan, kita masih bisa pergi.

Even if it rains, we can still go.

Tanaman itu akan tetap tumbuh **walau(pun)** tidak disiram.

That plant will still grow even if you don't water it.

Mereka tetap akan membuang sampah di situ **biar(pun)** lubang itu ditutup.

They will still throw rubbish there even if the hole is covered.

### Although it is so, in spite of

- **meski(pun)** begitu
- **meski(pun)** demikian
- **walau(pun)** begitu
- **walau(pun)** demikian
- **biar(pun)** begitu
- **biar(pun)** demikian

**Meski(pun)**, **walau(pun)** and **biar(pun)** are often combined with either **begitu** or **demikian** to mean 'in spite of that' or 'although/even though it is so'. **Demikian** is more formal, so it is not suitable to use when talking to close friends.

**Meski(pun) begitu/demikian**, saya tetap baik kepadanya.

In spite of that, I still treat him/her well.

**Walau(pun) begitu/demikian**, kami tetap percaya kepada mereka.

In spite of that, we still trust them.

**Biar(pun) begitu/demikian**, mereka masih saja tidak bisa menerima saran kami.

In spite of that, they still cannot accept our suggestion.



#### Note

One of the meanings of **begitu** and **demikian** is 'so'. However, because neither of these words can stand alone, we cannot use them to say, for example, 'He didn't come, so I went home'. **Begitu** and **demikian** only mean 'so' in the sense of 'even though/although it is so' (as in the above examples) or 'it is so ... that ...' ('to the extent that').

Film itu **begitu/demikian** panjangnya **sehingga** saya jadi bosan.

The film was so long that I got bored.



## LATIHAN 1

Translate the following sentences with **meski(pun)**, **walau(pun)** and **biar(pun)** into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Meskipun harga tiket pesawat terbang mahal, kami pergi juga ke Bali.
- 2 Walaupun demikian, dia tidak mau minta tolong pada saya.
- 3 Biar pun acara televisi jelek, saya menonton juga.

- 4 Meski cuaca dingin, Joni tidak memakai jaket.  
 5 Walau guru marah, murid-murid tidak berhenti bercakap-cakap.  
 6 Biar sering disiram, pohon itu tidak cepat tumbuh.  
 7 Walaupun dibayar 10 juta rupiah, saya tidak mau membantu orang seperti dia.  
 8 Guru itu baik walaupun tidak banyak tersenyum.  
 9 Jeremy pergi ke pertandingan sepak bola itu meskipun harga karcisnya mahal.  
 10 Dia terus mengirim email kepada saya meskipun saya tidak pernah membalasnya.

## Not ... but

- bukan ... tetapi
- bukan ... namun
- bukan ... melainkan

There are different ways of saying 'not ... but ...' in Indonesian. The first three expressions in the box above differ in terms of formality. **Bukan ... tetapi** is the most neutral, so we can use it for any situation, spoken or written. **Bukan ... namun** and **bukan ... melainkan** mean the same thing, but are more formal. They are therefore more suitable for use in formal speech (for example, with someone older or unfamiliar to you) or in writing. The difference between these expressions is similar to the difference between 'but' and 'however' in English.

**Bukan ini, tetapi itu.**

Not this, but that.

**Bukan kami enggan, namun kami memang benar-benar tidak bisa membantu.**

It's not that we're reluctant, but we in fact really couldn't help.

**Bukan kesehatan bapak saya yang merisaukan, melainkan kesehatan ibu.**

It's not my father's health that is worrying, but my mother's.

## Not only ... but also

- bukan saja ... tetapi juga
- bukan saja ... namun juga

To say 'not only ... but also', we simply add **saja** after **bukan**, and **juga** after **tetapi** or **namun**.

**Bukan saja dia malas, tetapi juga sering berbohong.**

Not only is he/she lazy, but (he/she) also often lies.

**Bukan saja dia pandai, namun juga baik hati.**

Not only is he/she smart, but (he/she) is also good-hearted.





## LATIHAN 2

Say the following in Indonesian, using the expressions that you have learnt.

Choose between **tetapi**, **namun** and **melainkan** for 'but' and specify to whom you are talking or on what occasion.

- 1 The party is not at my house, but in their house.
- 2 The exam is not only long, but also very difficult.
- 3 The merchandise in that shop is not only expensive, but also of low quality.
- 4 This city is not only large, but also beautiful.
- 5 We are not only happy you came, but also grateful.

### KOSAKATA

barang merchandise  
 berkualitas rendah of low quality  
 berterima kasih grateful

### Rather than ... in fact

- **bukannya ... malahan ...**

Another expression related to the ones above is **bukannya ... malahan ...** (rather than ... in fact ...). The table below shows how we can structure our sentence when using this expression.

BUKANNYA	VERB	SUBJECT	MALAHAN	VERB
Bukannya	diam	tangisnya	malahan	menjadi-jadi.
Rather than	stopping (being quiet)	his/her cry	in fact	became worse.
Bukannya	membantu	dia	malahan	berdiri saja menonton.
Rather than	helping	he/she	in fact	just stood there watching.

### Not ... on the contrary

- **bukannya ... tetapi malahan ...**

We can also add **tetapi** or **namun** before **malahan** to mean 'not ... on the contrary' or 'instead of ... he/she just ...'. To use it in a sentence, we can put the words in the following order.

SUBJECT	BUKANNYA	VERB	TETAPI MALAHAN	VERB
Hartono	bukannya	menjawab ketika dipanggil	tetapi malahan	ngeloyor pergi.
Hartono	did not	answer when called;	on the contrary,	(he/she) just left.
(Instead of answering when called, he/she just left.)				
Mereka	bukannya	mendengar -kan	tetapi malahan	menertawakan kami.
They	did not	listen (to us);	on the contrary,	they laughed at us.
(Instead of listening (to us), they just laughed at us.)				



### LATIHAN 3

Complete the following sentences, then translate them into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Bukannya tidur dia malahan \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Bukannya \_\_\_\_\_ Andreas malahan membaca majalah.
- 3 Bukannya makan nasi \_\_\_\_\_ malahan \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Bukannya minta maaf \_\_\_\_\_ malahan \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Bukannya \_\_\_\_\_ malahan meminjam uang kepada saya.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ bukannya \_\_\_\_\_ tetapi malahan tidur sampai siang.
- 7 Paman saya bukannya \_\_\_\_\_ tetapi malahan \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ bukannya \_\_\_\_\_ tetapi malahan menabrak mobil merah itu.
- 9 Burung itu bukannya \_\_\_\_\_ tetapi malahan \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ bukannya takut tetapi malahan \_\_\_\_\_

### Summary

To say:

- 'although', 'even though', 'even if':  
—meski(pun), walau(pun), biar(pun)
- 'although it is so', 'in spite of':  
—meski(pun)/walau(pun)/biar(pun) begitu  
—meski(pun)/walau(pun)/biar(pun) demikian
- 'not ... but': bukan ... tetapi/namun/melainkan
- 'not only ... but also': bukan ... tetapi/namun/melainkan juga
- 'rather than ... in fact': bukannya ... malahan
- 'not only ... on the contrary': bukannya ... tetapi malahan



## The ... More ... the ... More ...

The expression 'the more ... the more ...' indicates that something or someone undergoes a gradual change in condition or proportion.

In Indonesian we can use the following expressions to indicate such a change.

- makin ... makin ...
- (ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ...
- kian ... kian ...

### Makin ... makin ...

**Makin** is neutral in terms of formality, so we can use it for any situation.

Rita     makin lama     makin sombong.  
Rita     the longer     the more arrogant.  
→ Rita is getting more and more arrogant.

Harga bensin     makin hari     makin naik.  
The price of petrol     by the day     increases more.  
→ The price of petrol goes up every day.

We can also put the noun or noun phrase, such as 'Rita' or **harga bensin**, after the first **makin** phrase.

**Makin lama Rita makin sombong.**

**Makin hari harga bensin makin naik.**



#### Handy expression

To say 'the more the merrier' in Indonesian, we can use **makin banyak makin ramai**.

**KOSA**  
cepat

kurus  
perus:  
petan:  
sulit

## (Ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ...

The expression (ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ... means the same as **makin** and is used in the same way. The difference is, if we add the prefix **ber-** to **tambah**, it is a little more formal. As with **makin**, the noun (or noun phrase) can be placed at the beginning of the sentence or after the first (ber)tambah phrase.

Anak itu bertambah besar    bertambah cantik    parasnya.  
 That child    the older    the more beautiful    her face.  
 → That child is more beautiful the older she gets.

If we drop the prefix, the expression becomes less formal, like **makin**.

## Kian ... kian

The expression **Kian ... kian** is more formal. The noun (or noun phrase) can be placed at the beginning of the sentence or after the first **kian** phrase.

Kami    kian/hari    kian    jengkel.  
 We    by the day    the more    annoyed.  
 → We are getting more and more annoyed by the day.

## LATIHAN 1

Copy and complete the following sentences, filling in the empty spaces.

### KOSAKATA

cepat marah	quick to anger
kurus	thin, skinny
perusahaan	company
petani	farmer
sulit	difficult

**NOUN (NOUN PHRASE) MAKIN, (BER)TAMBAH, KIAN    MAKIN, (BER)TAMBAH, KIAN**

1	makin lama	
2		makin kurus
3	Pemuda itu	
4		kian sukses
5	Petani itu	

**MAKIN, (BER)TAMBAH, KIAN    NOUN (NOUN PHRASE)    MAKIN, (BER)TAMBAH, KIAN**

6	perokok itu	
7		makin sulit
8	Kian hari	
9		tambah cepat marah
10	direktur perusahaan itu	

## Summary

- **Makin ... makin, (ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah** and **kian ... kian** all express a gradual change in condition or proportion.
- **Makin ... makin** and **tambah ... tambah** can be used for any situation, while **bertambah ... bertambah** and **kian ... kian** are more formal.
- To use them in a sentence: the noun (or noun phrase) can be placed either at the beginning or after the first **makin, (ber)tambah** or **kian** phrase.

## Both ... and ... / ... As Well As ...

In Indonesian, the expression **baik ... maupun** is used to mean 'both ... and ...' or '... as well as ...'.

### **Baik ... maupun**

Here are some examples of the use of **baik ... maupun**.

**Baik** ibu **maupun** bapak saya tidak makan daging.

Both my mother and father do not eat meat.

Demonstrasi itu berlangsung **baik** di kota besar **maupun** kota kecil.

The demonstration took place both in big cities and small towns.

Anda bisa ke sana **baik** naik pesawat terbang **maupun** kapal laut.

You can go there both by plane and by boat.



## LATIHAN 1

Write five sentences using **baik ... maupun**.

Example:

<b>BAIK + SOMEONE</b>	<b>MAUPUN + SOMEONE ELSE</b>	<b>DO OR DON'T DO SOMETHING</b>
Baik Rudi Both Rudi	maupun Ani and Ani	tidak masuk sekolah hari ini. did not go to school today.

Write five more sentences using **baik ... maupun** in a different way.

Example:

<b>SOMETHING HAPPENS</b>	<b>BAIK + SOMEWHERE</b>	<b>MAUPUN + SOMEWHERE ELSE</b>
Terjadi gempa bumi There was an earthquake	baik di Jawa both in Java	maupun di Bali. and in Bali.



## LATIHAN 2

Translate these sentences into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

- 1 Baik kakak maupun adik saya suka musik dangdut.
- 2 Hotel itu memiliki bermacam-macam fasilitas, baik untuk rekreasi maupun bisnis.
- 3 Baik mie goreng maupun nasi goreng harganya sama.
- 4 Siapapun dilarang masuk pabrik itu, baik pegawai maupun bukan pegawai.
- 5 Baik kopi maupun teh mengandung kafein.
- 6 Penerbit Gramedia di Jakarta menerbitkan bermacam-macam buku, baik buku cerita anak-anak maupun buku ilmiah.
- 7 Robert selalu memakai celana pendek, baik pada musim panas maupun musim dingin.
- 8 Baik pisang maupun pepaya banyak mengandung vitamin.
- 9 Sopir taksi itu bekerja keras baik siang maupun malam.
- 10 Baik berjalan kaki maupun berenang adalah baik untuk kesehatan.

### Summary

**Baik ... maupun** translates into English as 'both ... and ...' or '... as well as ...'. It is used to refer to two things, two people, two places or two actions of comparable qualities or conditions.



## Let Alone

To say 'let alone ..., even ...' in Indonesian, we have the following choices.

- **jangkalan ... , ... pun/saja ...**
- **apalagi ... , ... saja ...**
- **kok ..., ... saja ...**
- **boro-boro ..., ... saja ...**

The last two of these expressions are more informal than the others and are used more in speaking than in writing.

### **Jangkalan ... pun/saja**

**Jangkalan** (let alone) is usually placed at the beginning of a sentence, while **pun** or **saja** comes in the second part of the sentence.

**Jangkalan ke Australia, ke Jakarta pun saya tidak mampu.**  
Let alone go to Australia; I can't even afford to go to Jakarta.

**Jangkalan berpidato, berbicara saja dia tidak becus.**  
Let alone make a speech; he/she can't even speak properly.

### **Apalagi ... saja**

**Apalagi** can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Apalagi kamu, saya saja tidak boleh masuk.**  
Let alone you, even I'm not allowed to go in.

**Saya saja tidak boleh masuk, apalagi kamu.**  
Even I'm not allowed to go in, let alone you.



## LATIHAN 1

Write five sentences using **janganpun ... pun/saja**.

Example:

JANGANpun + DO SOMETHING	DO SOMETHING ELSE + pun OR SAJA	SUBJECT DOESN'T/CAN'T DO
Janganpun makan buah, Let alone eat fruit,	makan nasi pun even eating rice	dia tidak mau. he/she doesn't want to do.

Write five sentences using **apalagi**.

Example:

SUBJECT + SAJA	CANNOT DO SOMETHING	APALAGI + SOMEBODY ELSE
Dia saja Even he/she	tidak bisa memecahkan persoalan itu cannot solve the problem,	apalagi kamu. let alone you.

## Kok ... saja and boro-boro ... saja

As mentioned at the beginning of the chapter, sentences with **kok ... saja** and **boro-boro ... saja** are informal and therefore are usually for informal spoken situations.

**Kok** beli mobil, untuk makan saja gaji saya tidak cukup.  
Let alone buy a car, even to buy food my salary is not enough.

**Boro-boro** menang undian, beli karcisnya saja dia tidak pernah.  
Let alone win a raffle, he/she never even buys tickets.



## LATIHAN 2

Write five sentences using **kok ... saja**.

Example:

KOK + SOMEONE	SOMEBODY ELSE + SAJA	DOESN'T/CAN'T DO SOMETHING
Kok perawat itu, Let alone that nurse,	dokter saja even the doctor	tidak bisa menyembuhkan dia. cannot cure him/her

Write five sentences using **boro-boro ... saja**.

Example:

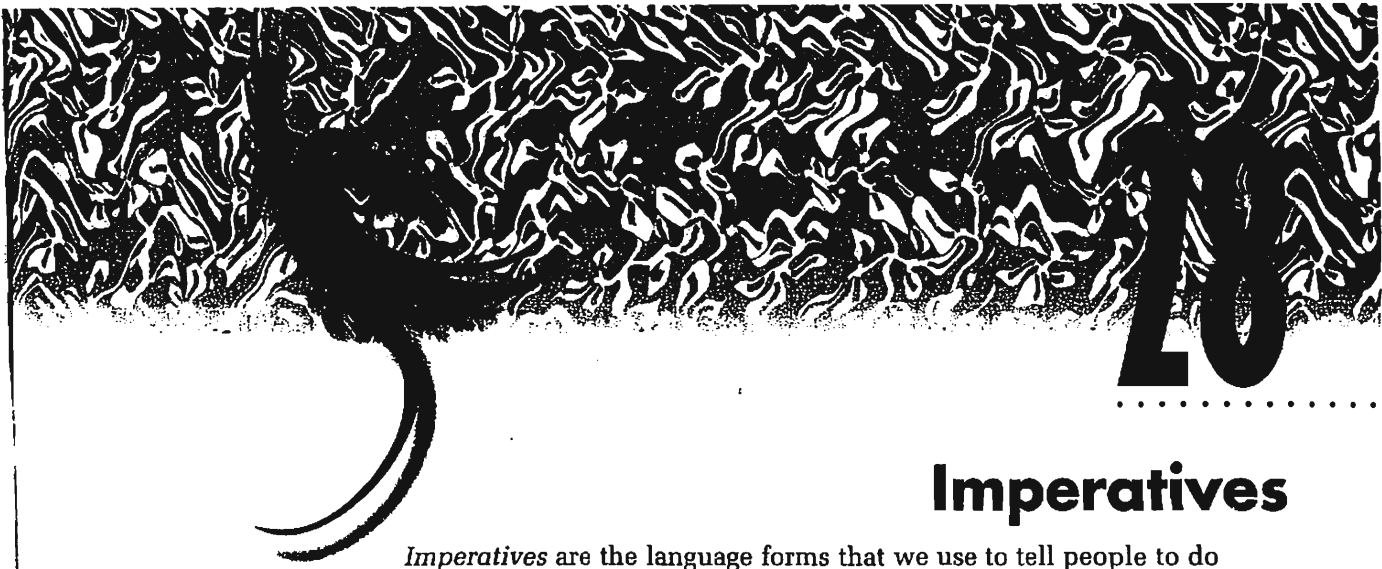
BORO-BORO + DO SOMETHING	DO SOMETHING ELSE + SAJA	SUBJECT DOESN'T/CAN'T DO
Boro-boro ke sekolah, Let alone go to school,	bangun saja even getting up	saya tidak bisa. I cannot do.



---

## Summary

- **Jangankan, apalagi, kok and boro-boro** all mean 'let alone'; they are paired with either **pun** or **saja** (even).
- **Pun** is more formal and is therefore compatible with **jangankan**.
- **Jangankan** is placed at the beginning of the sentence.
- **Apalagi** can appear either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.
- **Kok** and **boro-boro** are more informal and are appropriate for casual conversation.



tence.

## Imperatives

*Imperatives* are the language forms that we use to tell people to do things. This may mean giving commands, making requests, offering, inviting, urging or advising. We also use imperatives to tell people not to do something (prohibiting). These imperatives are called *negative imperatives*.

The forms that we use often depend on such things as when, where and to whom we are talking or writing. For example, the form that a teacher uses to give a command to his or her students in a classroom situation would generally be different from that used by two close friends. The first would be more formal, while the second would be less formal.

Also, certain forms tend to be used only in writing, while others are more commonly used in speaking.

In this chapter we look at these different forms and learn:

- how to choose which form(s) to use and for whom
- for which communicative situations they are appropriate

### Commands

Commands are instructions to tell people to do something, often immediately. In English, we might say 'Stand up!', 'Go to bed!', 'Eat your dinner!' and so forth. In Indonesian, the common forms to use vary, depending on whether the verb is transitive or intransitive. If the verb is transitive, the forms to use vary, depending on whether the object is specific or non-specific.

#### Commands using intransitive verbs

In intransitive sentences, the form of the verb does not change. So, if the verb has the prefix *ber-*, this prefix remains. For example, a teacher may say this to his or her students:

**Berdiri!**  
Stand up!

Similarly, if the verb has the prefix **meN-**, we keep this prefix. For example, if the same teacher wants the students to simply write, without specifying what to write, he or she will say:

**Menulis.**  
Write.

The prefix is still retained even if the teacher specifies when the action is to be performed (for example, 'now' or 'later'), because there is no object involved.

**Membaca dahulu lalu istirahat.**  
Read first, then rest.

For simple verbs, such as **makan**, that do not require an affix, nothing is added. Thus a mother may say to her ten-year-old daughter, who is a reluctant eater:

**Makan!**  
Eat!

### Commands using transitive verbs

In transitive sentences, the prefix **meN-** is dropped if the object is specific. For example, if your teacher tells you to write not simply any letter, but a letter to your penfriend, he or she will say:

**Tulis surat kepada sahabat penamu.**  
Write a letter to your penfriend.

Not:

**Menulis surat kepada sahabat penamu.**

Similarly, **meN-** is dropped in the following sentences.

**Buka halaman 5.**  
Open page 5.

**Buka pintu itu!**  
Open the door!





### Did you know?

Tone of voice has a lot to do with how our commands are interpreted. Commands may sound harsh or may be considered impolite if they are expressed in a strong or abrupt tone of voice. A softer tone may give an impression that the commands are polite and friendly.

## How to make commands more informal

- ayo
- coba
- ya
- dong

The imperative forms that we use often depend on when, where and to whom we are talking or writing. Formal situations require more formal forms, whereas informal situations are suitable for less formal forms. Different imperative forms express different degrees of formality. The more formal a form, the more polite it is generally considered to be. However, this does not mean that informal forms are always impolite. They can be so only if we misjudge the relation that we have as a speaker with the person(s) to whom we are speaking. We can inadvertently offend people by using inappropriate forms.

To make commands less formal, we can add **ayo**, **coba**, **ya** or **dong**.

---

### AYO AND COBA

The teacher giving the commands that we looked at on pages 167–8 could say the following instead.

**Ayo, berdiri!**

Come on, stand up!

**Ayo, menulis!**

Come on, write!

**Ayo, tulis surat kepada sahabat penamu!**

Come on, write a letter to your penfriend!

**Coba, buka halaman 5!**

Come on, open page 5!

**Coba, membaca dulu baru istirahat!**

Come on, read first, then rest!

**Coba, buka pintu itu!**

Come on, open that door!



Berdiri dong.

Stand up, won't you?

Pakai dong sepatumu.

Pakai sepatumu dong.

Wear your shoes, won't you?

Cuci mobilnya dong.

Cuci dong mobilnya.

Wash the car, won't you?



## LATIHAN 1

Read the following commands and decide whether they are correct (**Benar**) or incorrect (**Salah**). Remember that the **meN-** prefix is dropped in transitive sentences if the object is specific.

- 1 Tidur di sana ya!
- 2 Coba menelepon temanmu itu!
- 3 Melihat foto saya!
- 4 Ayo, mendengarkan musik ini ya.
- 5 Coba, berlari ke sana!
- 6 Membawa anjingmu ke rumah saya ya.
- 7 Ayo mengetik artikel penting ini di komputer.
- 8 Makan buah dan sayur setiap hari ya.
- 9 Belikan saya es krim dong!
- 10 Menyimpan fotomu itu baik-baik!

### KOSAKATA

membawa	to take
mengetik	to type
menyimpan	to keep, store
penting	important

### How to make commands more formal

- -lah
- harap
- hendaklah/hendaknya
- mohon

We can make commands more polite and formal by adding different words or part words, such as **-lah**, **harap**, **hendaklah** or **hendaknya** and **mohon**. When we add these words, our commands also become more impersonal. Because of that, they would not be suitable for use with friends, family members or people with whom we have an informal relation.

#### -LAH

The suffix **-lah** is a *particle*. It is not commonly used in spoken Indonesian, but is included here because you are likely to come across it in short stories or novels. It is 'formal' in the sense that we would not use it in casual conversation. The addition of **-lah** in written Indonesian makes a command softer and it may be attached to both intransitive and transitive verbs.

**Berdirilah.**

Please stand up.

**Tulislah surat kepada nenekmu.**

Please write a letter to your grandmother.

**Bukalah pintu itu.**

Please open that door.

---

**HARAP**

Literally meaning 'to hope' or 'to expect', **harap** forms the intransitive verb **berharap** and the transitive verbs **mengharap** and **mengharapkan**. Its use in imperatives means something like 'you are expected to do this', even though it is usually translated into English as 'please'. It is appropriate for use in formal announcements, where the addressee is a group of people rather than an individual.

**Harap** is usually placed at the beginning of the command, if the addressee is not mentioned. When the addressee is mentioned, **harap** is usually placed after it.

**Harap berdiri.**

Please stand up.

**Penumpang harap tetap duduk.**

Passengers please remain seated.

---

**MOHON**

**Mohon**, which also translates as 'please' in English, is similar to **harap** in its formality. However, unlike **harap**, **mohon** has a sense of urgency and pleading. Like **harap**, **mohon** can be placed at the beginning of the sentence, to produce a more direct command, or after the mention of the addressee, to make the command a little more indirect.

**Mohon balas surat ini segera.**

Please reply to this letter immediately.

**Kami mohon hadirin tetap tenang**

Literally: We ask you (the audience) to remain calm. → Please remain calm.

**Saya mohon anda pergi dari sini.**

Literally: I ask you to leave → Please get out of here.

---

**HENDAKLAH AND HENDAKNYA**

The word **hendak** forms a part of the noun **kehendak**, meaning 'a will or wish (to do something)'. By itself, without the prefix, it is used to indicate future action; for example, **Mereka hendak datang ke rumah saya** (They are going to come to my house). When used in commands, either **-lah** or **-nya** is attached to it. Because of their very formal nature, **hendaklah** and **hendaknya** are not common in everyday spoken Indonesian and are suitable for telling people to do abstract actions.

**Hendaklah hal ini menjadi perhatian kita semua.**

Let this matter become our concern.

Similarly, the mother telling her daughter to eat could say instead:

**Ayo, makan.**

Come on, eat.

---

#### YA

Ya literally means 'yes'. When used in commands, it is similar to the 'won't you/will you' tag that is used in English. It is usually placed at the end of the sentence.

**Tidur ya.**

Go to sleep, won't you?

**Makan ya.**

Eat, won't you?



#### Note

Because ya can make a command quite soft, it is less suitable for situations that demand formality. The above commands, given by a mother to her child, certainly do not mean 'Do what I say right now', but rather something like 'It would be good if you did this now'.

In transitive sentences, ya can be placed either after the verb, to emphasise the action, or at the end, which then puts the focus on the whole command.

**Lipat ya baju ini.**

**Lipat baju ini ya.**

Fold this shirt, won't you?

**Makan ya obatnya.**

**Makan obatnya ya.**

Take the medication, won't you?

---

#### DONG

Dong is more informal than ayo and ya and, when used in commands, also roughly translates into English as 'won't you' or 'will you'. Like ya, dong can be placed either after the verb, to emphasise the action, or at the end of the command, to emphasise the whole command.



#### Be careful!

Because dong is informal, it is not an expression that we would use in situations that require us to observe formality, such as in ceremonial situations, public announcements or when speaking to strangers in the street or to guests. For example, one would not normally say to a priest: **Berkati saya dong** ('Please bless me') or to the guests at a formal function: **Duduk dong** ('Please sit down').

Dong is most appropriate when used among close friends and family members.

Hendaklah/hendaknya can also be used for reprimanding very formally.

**Hendaknya** Saudara mengerti betul hal ini.

Saudara **hendaknya** mengerti betul hal ini.

You should really understand this.



## LATIHAN 2

You will find a wealth of imperatives in recipes. Below is a recipe for a Thai dessert from *Femina*, an Indonesian women's magazine. Translate the recipe into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

### Ketan saus mangga

#### Bahan:

200 g	beras ketan putih
100 mL	santan kental
3 sdm	gula pasir
1/2 sdt	garam
1 lembar	daun pandan
2 buah (350 g)	mangga masak pohon, kupas, iris tipis daging buahnya

#### Saus:

100 mL	santan kental, rebus
1 sdm	gula pasir halus
1/4 sdt	garam

#### Cara membuat:

- Cuci beras ketan, tiriskan. Kukus beras ketan dalam dandang sampai ketan setengah matang. Angkat.
- Aduk ketan kukus bersama santan, gula pasir, dan garam hingga santan terhisap oleh ketan.
- Kukus kembali ketan dan daun pandan dalam dandang panas sampai matang. Angkat.
- Saus: Aduk santan kental dan gula hingga gula larut.
- Hidangkan ketan kukus bersama sausnya dan irisan mangga.

Untuk 6 orang

Kalori per porsi: 275

sdm = sendok makan

sdt = sendok teh.

*Femina* no. 14/XXV, 10–16 April 1997, p. 177



### Did you know?

**Gula pasir** literally means 'sand sugar', because the granules look like sand. 'Icing sugar' is **gula halus**, which literally means fine or smooth sugar (because it is in powder form).

**Beras ketan** means 'glutinous rice'. Have you seen or tasted it? If not, next time you go to an Asian grocery, you might like to buy some.



Did you know these different words for 'rice' in Indonesian?

<b>padi</b>	rice plant
<b>beras</b>	uncooked rice
<b>beras merah</b>	red rice (in Indonesia, often given as a food supplement for babies)
<b>nasi</b>	cooked rice
<b>nasi putih</b>	plain steamed rice
<b>nasi goreng</b>	fried rice
<b>ketan hitam</b>	black glutinous rice (used for black rice pudding)

## Requests

### **minta**

Requesting means that we are asking for something or to be allowed to do something. This is rather different from commands, where we are telling people to do something. Some examples of requests are:

- a boss requesting a document to be typed
- a student requesting an extension for an assignment
- a doctor requesting a blood test to be done on his or her patient
- a friend requesting help with homework

In Indonesian, the word **minta** can be used to ask for something. This use of **minta** in imperatives translates into English as 'Can I/we ...?'. Of course, requests are not restricted to this word; other verbs can be used as well, as we can see below.

#### **Minta nasinya.**

Can I have some rice?

#### **Minta kertas dua lembar lagi.**

Can I have two more sheets of paper?

#### **Bagi kuenya.**

Can I have a share of the cake?

#### **Ketikkan surat ini.**

Type this letter for me.

## How to make requests more informal

- **ya**
- **dong**

As with commands, we can use **ya** and **dong** in certain situations to make our requests more informal and less abrupt.

**Minta nasinya ya.**

**Minta nasinya dong.**

Can I have some rice, please?

**Bagi kuenya ya.**

**Bagi kuenya dong.**

Share the cake, please.

**Ketikkan surat ini ya.**

**Ketikkan surat ini dong.**

Type this letter for me, please.

## How to make requests more polite

- **tolong**
- **minta tolong**

Requests can be made more polite by adding the word **tolong**, which literally means 'help', but which, when used in requests, means 'please (do something)'. Because **tolong** is polite, but not overly formal, it can be used for a wide variety of situations and with different addressees (with friends, strangers, teachers, parents and so on). We should note that, even though **tolong** can be translated as 'please' in English, it cannot be used for offering (for example, 'Please eat', 'Please let me do it') or for invitations (for example, 'Please come to the party').

When we use **tolong**, the **meN-** prefix is dropped.

**Tolong bantu saya.**

Please help me.

**Tolong pegangkan payung ini.**

Please hold this umbrella (for me).

**Tolong panggilkan polisi.**

Please call the police (for me).

**Tolong** can be combined with **minta**, to make the request more urgent.

**Minta tolong panggilkan polisi.**

Please help call the police.

We can also combine **tolong** with **ya** and **dong**, to make polite but informal (and friendly) requests. **Ya** and **dong** can be placed either after **tolong**, to emphasise politeness, or at the end of the sentence, to emphasise the whole request.

**Tolong ya jagakan tas saya.**

**Tolong jagakan tas saya ya.**

Would you please mind my bag for me?

**Tolong ya temani bapak ke toko.**

**Tolong temani bapak ke toko ya.**

Would you please accompany father to the shop?

## Very formal requests

- **sudilah (kiranya)**

If we want to make very formal and very polite requests to someone in a very high position, we can use **sudilah** or **sudilah kiranya**. These expressions mean 'I/we hope you are willing to do this'. **Sudilah (kiranya)** is hardly used in spoken Indonesian because of its highly formal nature, so we certainly would not want to use it with friends or family.

**Sudilah (kiranya) bapak Presiden menghadiri pertemuan kami.**  
We hope you, Mr President, are willing to attend our meeting.



## LATIHAN 3

Use appropriate words for requesting in the following situations. Consider who you are talking to and choose the most suitable form for each request. The verb that you need to use is given in parentheses. (Drop the **meN-** prefix, if appropriate.)

- 1 You have an early appointment with the dentist tomorrow and you are not good at waking up early. Ask your brother to wake you up at 7 a.m. (**membangunkan**)
- 2 You have just rung your teacher at school to tell her that you are sick, but she was in class. Leave a message with the secretary to pass on to your teacher when she returns, informing her that you are sick. (**memberitahukan**)
- 3 You are about to send a payment for your annual magazine subscription through the mail. You want the magazine to send you a receipt. Write your request. (**mengirimkan**)

## Inviting

- **mari**
- **ayo**
- **yuk**

Inviting can mean two things: we may invite someone to join in an activity, such as going to the movies, or we may invite someone to come to our place or to a function, such as a birthday party. Indonesian has different verbs to express these two meanings of inviting: **mengajak** and **mengundang**.

Inviting can be expressed as a question (for example, 'Would you like to go to the movies?') or as an imperative (for example, 'Let's go to the movies', 'Drop by any time'). In this chapter, we look at the imperative forms only.

We can use **mari** and **ayo** for inviting someone to join in an activity (**mengajak**). Both are usually placed at the beginning of a sentence and are very common in spoken Indonesian. The difference between them is in their degree of formality: **mari** is more formal than **ayo**.

**Mari** kita pulang.

Let's go home.

**Ayo** kita makan dulu.

Let's eat first.

**Ayo** jalan-jalan sore ini.

Let's go out this evening.

**Ayo** is often shortened to **yuk** and can be placed either at the beginning of the sentence or right at the end. **Yuk** is even less formal than **ayo** and, because of that, we can use it with friends. For instance, you can say the following to your close friend, but not to your teacher:

**Yuk** kita ke perpustakaan.

Kita ke perpustakaan **yuk**.

Let's go to the library.

We can also use **mari**, **ayo** and **yuk** to invite someone to our place or function (**mengundang**).

**Mari** mampir ke rumah.

**Ayo** mampir ke rumah.

Mampir ke rumah **yuk**.

Do drop by.

If we want to be polite and more formal, we can use **silakan** ('please') for **mengundang** (but not for **mengajak**). For example, you could say the following to your mother's friend who comes to visit.

**Silakan** masuk, Bu.

Please come in.

**Silakan** duduk, saya akan panggil ibu saya.

Please sit down; I will call my mother.

With your friends, however, you may prefer to use **ya** or **dong** alongside the verb. Your offers would resemble commands when you do this.

Masuk **dong**, jangan di luar.

Come in; don't stay outside.

Duduk dulu **ya**, saya ke kamar sebentar.

Have a seat; I have to go to my room for a minute.

Datang **ya** ke pesta saya.

Datang **dong** ke pesta saya.

Come to my party.



## LATIHAN 4

Use appropriate words for inviting in the following situations. Consider who you are talking to and choose the most suitable form for each invitation. The verbs are given in parentheses. (Drop the **meN-** prefix, if appropriate.)

- 1 Invite your close friend to come and stay the night at your place. (menginap)
- 2 Invite your younger sister to go and have a coffee with you. (minum kopi)
- 3 Invite your friend's parents to come to your school concert on Saturday. (datang)

## Offering

**ayo**

**mari**

**biar**

Offering can be understood to mean 'offering to do something for someone' or 'offering something to someone'. We can express the first meaning using **ayo**, **mari** and **biar**—all of which roughly mean '(come on, here) let me (or someone else) do it' when used in offering. All of them are placed at the beginning of the sentence.

As with the other uses, **ayo** makes the imperative more informal. However, its use here differs from the previous ones in that here the action is to be performed by the speaker, not the addressee. As in invitation, **mari** is more polite and formal. **Biar**, on the other hand, is polite, but neutral in terms of formality.

**Ayo** saya cucikan bajunya.

Come on, let me wash the clothes for you.

**Mari** saya bawakan kopernya.

Here, let me carry the suitcase for you.

**Biar** bapak saya yang mengantarkan dia ke sekolah.

Let my father take her to school.

The second sense of offering is expressed by using **silakan** and also **ayo**. As with their use in invitation, the difference between these two words lies in their degree of formality: **silakan** is more formal than **ayo**.

**Silakan** minum.

**Ayo** minum.

Please drink.



## LATIHAN 5

Use appropriate words for offering in the following situations. Consider who you are talking to and choose the most suitable form for each offer. The verbs are given in parentheses. (Drop the **meN-** prefix, if appropriate.)

- 1 Your older sister has just said that she will make a cup of coffee. Offer to make one for her. (membuatkan)

- 2 Your mother is going to put your little brother to bed. Offer to do that for her. (**menidurkan**)
- 3 You have an exciting job promoting Australian apples in Indonesia. Encourage passers-by to try the apples. (**mencoba**)

## Advising

- **sebaiknya**

A word that we can use to give advice to people is **sebaiknya**, meaning 'it is best that' or 'you had better'. This word is polite and a little formal.

**Sebaiknya** kau tanya ibumu dulu.

Kau **sebaiknya** tanya ibumu dulu.

It is best that you ask your mother first/You had better ask your mother first.

Although **sebaiknya** is generally used for advising, it can also be used to give a polite command and can be placed either at the beginning of the sentence or after the mention of the addressee.

**Sebaiknya** Saudara keluar kelas.

Saudara **sebaiknya** keluar kelas.

It is best that you leave this class/You had better leave this class.



## LATIHAN 6

Your Indonesian penfriend is coming to Australia. In Indonesian, give five points of advice (**nasehat**) to your friend about things that he or she should bring or do before departure. Copy and complete the following table, beginning each piece of advice with **sebaiknya**.

Nasehat 1: Sebaiknya \_\_\_\_\_

Nasehat 2: Sebaiknya \_\_\_\_\_

Nasehat 3: Sebaiknya \_\_\_\_\_

Nasehat 4: Sebaiknya \_\_\_\_\_

Nasehat 5: Sebaiknya \_\_\_\_\_

## How to say 'do not'

- **jangan**
- **dilarang**
- **tidak usah/tidak perlu**

Often we wish to tell people not to do something. The forms that we use to do this are called negative imperatives. In Indonesian, we have a choice of **jangan**, **dilarang** and **tidak usah**.

## Jangan

This word simply means 'do not' and is neutral in terms of politeness and formality. Depending on how formal or urgent we want our sentence to be, we can also add **tolong**, **ya** and **dong**. As with the other uses, **tolong** makes a polite prohibition, whereas **ya** and **dong** create a sense of informality.



### Note

When we use  **jangan**, we can either keep or drop the **meN-** prefix.

Jangan (mem) baca sambil makan.

Don't read while eating.

Jangan (mem) baca sambil makan ya.

Don't read while eating, will you?

Jangan (mem) baca sambil makan dong.

Don't read while eating, will you?

Tolong jangan (mem) baca sambil makan.

Please don't read while eating.

**Jangan** can be also used alongside **mohon**, **harap**, **tolong**, **coba**, **ayo**, **hendaknya** and **sebaiknya**.

Harap jangan berdiri. (formal, impersonal command)

Please do not stand up.

Mohon jangan bicara keras-keras. (formal, impersonal command)

Please don't speak too loudly.

Tolong jangan panggil polisi. (polite request)

Please don't call the police.

Coba jangan menangis begitu. (informal urging)

Come on, don't cry like that.

Ayo jangan mencontoh pekerjaan temanmu. (informal urging)

Come on, don't copy your friend's work.

Sebaiknya jangan keluar kelas. (polite advice)

You had better not leave the class.



## LATIHAN 7

Here is a cartoon strip from *Kisah Petualangan Tintin 'Bintang Jatuh'*. The third picture contains negative imperatives with  **jangan**. Find out the meaning of the negative imperatives.



## Dilarang

Literally meaning 'it is prohibited', this word is the passive form of the verb **melarang** (to prohibit) and is used primarily for public notices (official prohibitions). For instance, the following notice may be found at a spot where pedlars are not supposed to have their base of operations.

**Dilarang berjualan di sini.**

Do not do any selling here.

Other common notices are:

**Dilarang membuang sampah di sini.**

Do not throw rubbish here.

**Dilarang masuk.**

Do not enter.

Imperatives using **dilarang** are impersonal, formal and mostly used in written Indonesian. The person doing the prohibiting is not stated, but can be assumed. Because of this impersonal nature, we would not use this form in casual speech except in jest; for example, to tell a friend not to come to our house, or to tell your older sister not to be angry with you.





## LATIHAN 8

Here is a picture showing a public sign with **dilarang**. What does the sign mean in English?



### **Tidak usah or tidak perlu**

Both **tidak usah** (don't bother) and **tidak perlu** (there is no need) can be used for a wide variety of situations. Like **jangan**, these expressions are neutral in formality and politeness. However, **jangan** is more direct and, therefore, can be very appropriate if we want stronger prohibitions (for example, when we feel like being particularly harsh to someone).

As with **jangan**, the **meN-** prefix can be kept or dropped when we use **tidak usah** or **tidak perlu**.

**Tidak perlu datang pagi-pagi sekali.**

There is no need to come too early. (Don't come too early.)

**Tidak usah (mem)beritahu ayahmu.**

Don't bother to tell your father. (Don't tell your father.)

**Tidak usah repot-repot bawa kado.**

There is no need to bring a present. (Don't bother to bring a present.)



## LATIHAN 9

Copy and complete the following table, giving five points of advice to your friends, who are about to go to Indonesia, on things that they should not do or that they do not need to do. Use **jangan**, **dilarang**, **tidak usah** or **tidak perlu**.

Example:

Illegal drugs are prohibited, so you should not carry any.

There are lots of mosquitoes at night, so you should take some mosquito repellent.

Nasehat 1:

Nasehat 2:

Nasehat 3:

Nasehat 4:



## LATIHAN 10

Below are some situations in which negative imperatives are appropriate. Write a sentence for each situation, using **jangan**, **dilarang**, **tidak usah** or **tidak perlu**.

- 1 You are inviting a friend to your birthday party. Tell him that he does not need to bring a present (**membawa**), but that he should not be late (**terlambat**).
- 2 Your little brother or sister keeps nagging you while you are studying. Tell him or her to stop bothering you (**mengganggu**).
- 3 You have been asked to put up a sign in class in Indonesian that prohibits people from using their mobile phones (**telepon genggam**) in class. What would you write? (**memakai**)
- 4 You have just failed your exam and feel terrible about it. Your teacher is telling you not to be discouraged. What would he or she say? (**berkecil hati**)
- 5 Your friend is new to town. You want to advise her not to go out at night by herself. What would you say? (**keluar**)

### Imperatives in object-focus

Imperatives that are expressed as transitive sentences often appear in the object-focus (passive).

Object-focus imperatives are usually considered more polite, non-offensive and less direct than their corresponding subject-focus (active) imperatives, because the focus of our attention is shifted from the doer of the action (which, in most cases, is the person to whom we are speaking) to the object of the sentence. It is like saying 'Let this be done', rather than 'You do this'. This form of imperative is also very common in Indonesian, but often cannot be translated literally into English.

We can use object-focus imperatives for a wide variety of situations and with anybody. In fact, if you are not sure about whether or not you are being polite enough when you use the forms we have discussed so far, it is probably best to resort to the object-focus forms.

Object-focus imperatives are not the easiest forms to learn, but they represent a more natural way of saying 'Do this' in Indonesian.

## Transforming subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives

The rules for transforming subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives are the same as those discussed in Chapter 19. The only differences are that, in subject-focus imperatives:

- there are imperative word(s) in the sentence
- the main verb has no prefix



### Note

Only imperatives that use transitive verb(s) can be transformed into object-focus imperatives. (If there is no object, as in intransitive imperatives, there is nothing to be transformed.)

To make an object-focus imperative, follow these steps.

- Shift the object to the subject position or to a position following the imperative word(s), if there is no subject.
- Follow the object-focus rules for changing the verb form for first, second or third person.
- Keep the imperative word(s) and other words, such as adverb and prepositional phrase, where they are.

### Prohibition:

<b>Jangan</b>	<b>beritahu</b>	<b>ayahmu.</b> (Subject-focus)
<i>Negative imperative</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Object</i>
Do not	tell	your father.

<b>Jangan</b>	<b>ayahmu</b>	<b>diberitahu.</b> (Object-focus)
<i>Negative imperative</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>di- verb</i>
Literally: Don't let your father be told.		
→ Don't let your father know.		

### Request:

<b>Tolong ya</b>	<b>temani</b>	<b>bapak</b>	<b>ke toko.</b> (Subject-Focus)
<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>Prepositional phrase</i>
Please accompany father to the shop, won't you?			

<b>Tolong ya</b>	<b>bapak</b>	<b>ditemani</b>	<b>ke toko.</b> (Object-Focus)
<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>di- verb</i>	<i>Prepositional phrase</i>
Literally: Please father be accompanied to the shop.			
→ Please accompany father to the shop, won't you?			



## LATIHAN 11

Transform the following subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives. The meaning of each object-focus imperative is provided. Remember that you have to follow the rules for first, second and third person subject for object-focus rules (refer to Chapter 19).

### 1 Urging (no subject)

IMPERATIVE	VERB	OBJECT	ADVERB
Ayo	habiskan	makannya	dulu

Literally: Come on, let the food be eaten first.  
→ Come on, eat your food first.

### 2 Offering

IMPERATIVE	SUBJECT	VERB	OBJECT
Mari	saya	bawakan	kopernya

Literally: Here, the suitcase be carried by me for you.  
→ Here, let me carry the suitcase for you.

### 3 Advising

IMPERATIVE	SUBJECT	VERB	OBJECT	ADVERB
Sebaiknya	kau	tanya	ibumu	dulu

Literally: It's better that your mother is asked by you first.  
→ It's better that you ask your mother first. (You had better ask your mother first.)



## LATIHAN 12

To further test how well you can shift your focus from the doer of the action to the object of that action, convert the following subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives. Then translate each sentence into English.

- 1 Parent to a young child:
  - a Ayo, pakai bajunya dulu.
  - b Pakai dong sepatunya.
  - c Ayo, minum susunya.
- 2 An employee to his or her boss:
  - a Biar saya angkat barangnya.
  - b Maaf Bu, minta tolong tandatangani cek ini.
- 3 To your close friend:
  - a Tolong dong pinjami saya uang.
  - b Antarkan saya ke dokter besok ya.
- 4 A teacher to his/her students:
  - a Baca bab 6 untuk minggu depan.
  - b Bantu temanmu yang baru itu.
  - c Ketik tugas itu.



## LATIHAN 13

Here is an interesting small rubric from the Indonesian newspaper *Kompas*. Find out what it is about. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Yohanes Surya, Ph.D.

# FISIKA itu ASYIK

Ambil UANG LOGAM, susun seperti gambar.  
Letakkan GELAS berisi air di atasnya dan PIRING di atas gelas tersebut.

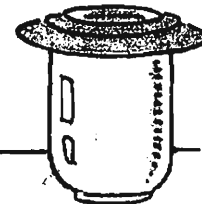
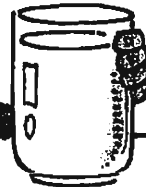
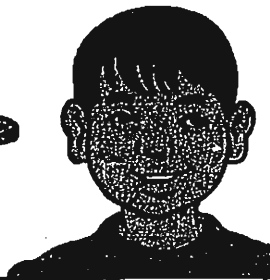
Lihat ke arah uang di

bawah gelas,  
uang lenyap!

MENGAPA?



COBALAH!



Masukkan TELUR dalam TOPLES berisi air garam.

Telur akan terapung (gambar a).

Tuang air tawar ke dalam toples itu hingga penuh (gambar b).

Ternyata telur berada di tengah.



MENGAPA?

COBALAH!



Jawab:

- Menurut fisika, orang bisa melihat benda karena ada sinar datang dari benda ke mata. Sinar dan uang logam dibiaskan air. Sinar bias ini terhalang oleh piring hingga tidak sampai di mata. Itu sebabnya mata tidak dapat melihat uang tersebut.
- Menurut fisika, benda dengan massa jenis lebih besar akan tenggelam. Massa jenis telur lebih besar dari massa jenis air tawar tetapi lebih kecil dari massa jenis air garam. Itu sebabnya telur tenggelam di air tawar tetapi terapung di air garam.

---

## Summary

- Imperatives: commands, requests, offering, inviting, urging, advising
- Negative imperatives: 'Do not'
- For intransitive verbs: no change to the verb
- For transitive verbs: drop the **meN-** prefix if the object is specific; retain if not
- Commands:
  - Informal: **ya, ayo, coba, dong**
  - Formal: **-lah, harap, mohon, hendaklah/nya**
- Requests: **minta**
  - Informal: **minta ya, minta dong**
  - Polite: **tolong (ya/dong), minta tolong (ya/dong)**
  - Formal: **sudilah (kiranya)**
- Inviting: **mari, ayo, yuk, silakan**
- Offering: **ayo, mari, biar, silakan**
- Advising: **sebaiknya**
- Negative imperatives: **jangan, dilarang, tidak usah or tidak perlu**

# 19

## Reporting What Has Been Said

Often we like to tell other people what someone has said or repeat what we ourselves have said. We do this either by quoting what has been said directly (*direct speech*) or indirectly (*indirect speech*); for example, using 'he/she/we/I/you/they said ...'. In writing, direct speech is indicated by quotation marks.

### Direct reporting:

He said: 'The police came to our house last night.'  
I said to her: 'I forgot to return the library books.'

### Indirect reporting:

He said that the police came to their house last night.  
I said to her that I had forgotten to return the library books.

In this chapter we will learn how to report directly and indirectly in Indonesian.

## 'Say' verbs in Indonesian

To report directly in Indonesian, we can use the following words.

- **berkata/mengatakan** (to say)
- **bertanya** (to ask a question)
- **berujar** (to say, to comment)
- **bilang** (to say) (informal)
- **menambah** (to add)

## Direct reporting

There are two ways to report or quote directly in Indonesian: one is by putting the 'he/she/we/I/you/they said ...' part in front; the other is by putting it after we quote what was said.



at  
aid

t what  
an  
ample,

in



e is by  
is by

If we put the 'he/she/we/I/you/they said ...' part first, the prefix **ber-** or **me-** is retained (except for the verb **bilang**, which does not have a prefix).

**Kakak saya berkata: 'Besok saya akan ke planetarium.'**  
My older sibling said: 'Tomorrow I will go to the planetarium.'

**Mereka bertanya: 'Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?'**  
They asked: 'When is your birthday?'

If we quote first, the prefix is dropped and the subject (the person whose words you quote) comes after the verb.

**'Besok saya akan ke planetarium,' kata kakak saya.**  
'Tomorrow I will go to the planetarium,' my older sibling said.

**'Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?' tanya mereka.**  
'When is your birthday?' they asked.

If the subject is **dia**, it becomes **-nya** when the quote is mentioned first.

**Dia bertanya: 'Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?'**  
He/she asked: 'When is your birthday?'

**'Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?' tanyanya.**  
'When is your birthday?' she asked.



**Note**

**Bilang** is an exception. Unlike the other words, its form does not change, whether you put it before or after the quote. It always follows the subject and it is never prefixed.

**Dia bilang: 'Saya melihat hantu tadi malam.'**  
He/she said: 'I saw a ghost last night.'

**'Saya melihat hantu tadi malam,' dia bilang.**  
'I saw a ghost last night,' he/she said.

Remember that this verb is informal and is therefore more suitable for casual conversation or for e-mailing friends.



**LATIHAN 1**

Copy and complete the following, filling in the direct quote part of each sentence. Remember to put in the quotation marks.

<b>KOSAKATA</b>	
mahasiswa	university students
orang gila	mad person

- 1 Orang gila itu bilang: \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Teman saya menambah: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Orang itu berujar: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Dokter Ratna berkata: \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Para mahasiswa bertanya: \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ kata penjual buah-buahan itu.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ ujar sopir truk itu.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ bapak saya bilang.
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ tanyanya.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ tambah mereka.



## Indirect reporting

There are different ways to report indirectly, depending on what kind of sentence we are reporting.

### Using *bahwa* for statements

If the sentence that we are reporting is a statement, we use **bahwa** (that) after the 'say' verb.

**Dia berkata/mengatakan bahwa dia beragama Islam.**  
He/she said that he/she is a Muslim.

**Anak kecil itu berkata/mengatakan bahwa dia suka sekali makan permen.**  
That child said that he/she really likes eating lollies.

### Using *apakah* for 'yes' or 'no' questions

If what we are reporting is a question requiring a 'yes' or 'no' answer, we use **apakah** (if, whether), after the verb *bertanya* (to ask a question).

**Indri bertanya apakah saya pernah melihat hantu.**  
Indri asked if I had ever seen a ghost.

**Saya bertanya kepada kamu apakah mau ikut dan kamu bilang tidak.**  
I asked you whether you wanted to come along and you said you didn't.



## LATIHAN 2

Report what the animals and people in the following pictures say using either **bahwa** (for statements) or **apakah** (for 'yes' or 'no' questions).

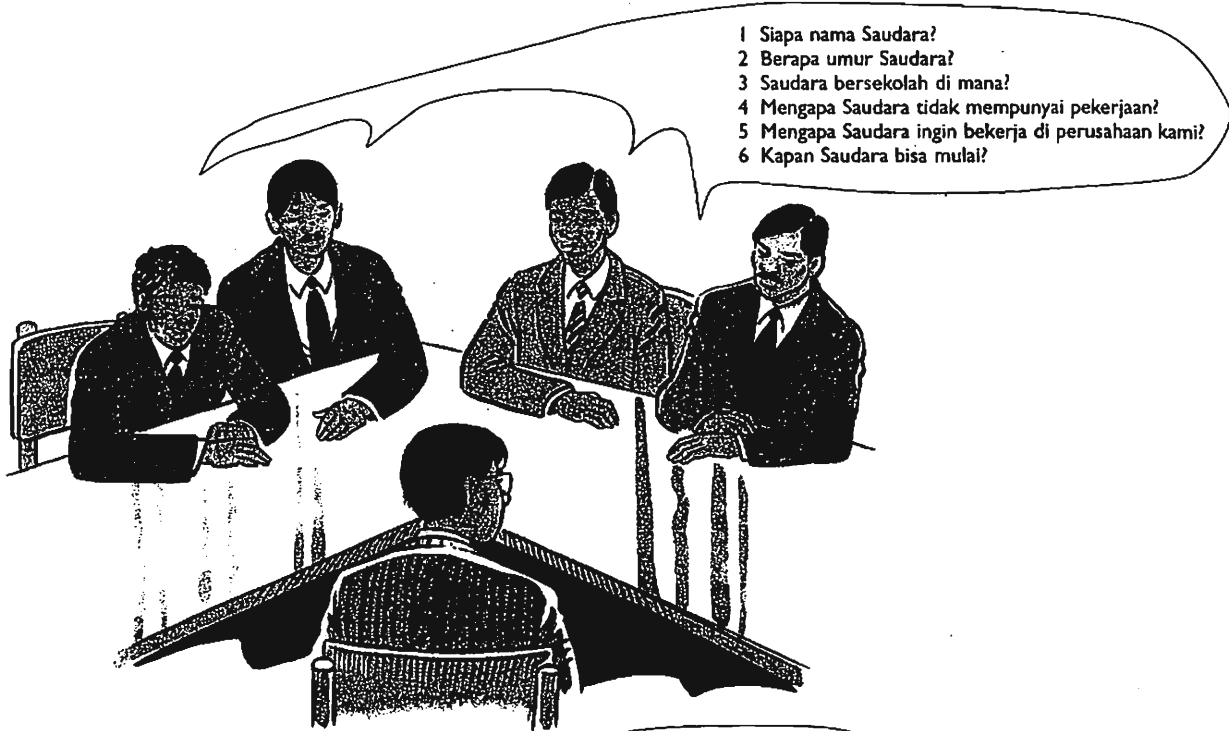




### Reporting a 'wh-' question

- apa (what)
- siapa (who)
- berapa (how many/how much)
- mengapa (why)
- bagaimana (how)
- yang mana (which one)

If what we are reporting is a 'wh-' question (see Chapter 1), such as those listed above, we do not need to add anything after the verb bertanya, as shown in the following pictures.

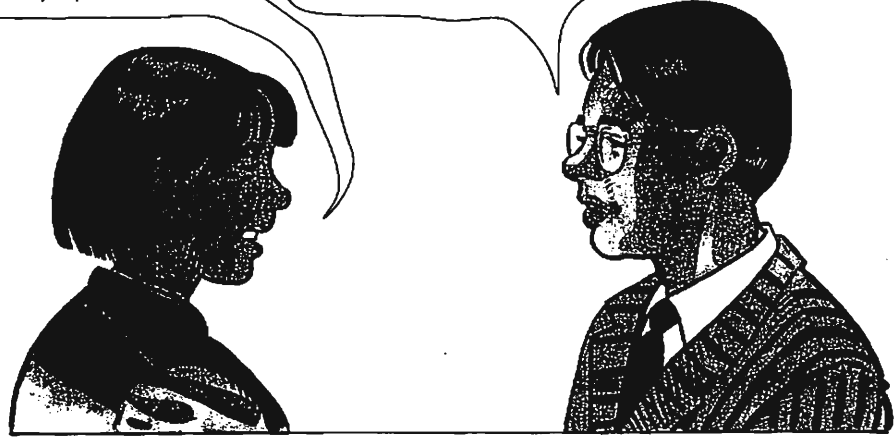


- 1 Siapa nama Saudara?
- 2 Berapa umur Saudara?
- 3 Saudara bersekolah di mana?
- 4 Mengapa Saudara tidak mempunyai pekerjaan?
- 5 Mengapa Saudara ingin bekerja di perusahaan kami?
- 6 Kapan Saudara bisa mulai?

Mereka bertanya apa di interview?

Banyak sekali pertanyaannya!  
Mereka bertanya

- 1 siapa nama saya
- 2 berapa umur saya
- 3 saya bersekolah di mana
- 4 mengapa saya tidak mempunyai pekerjaan
- 5 mengapa saya ingin bekerja di perusahaan mereka
- 6 kapan saya bisa mulai



### Reporting a command

To report a command, we can use the following verbs and add **supaya** or **agar** after them.

- **menyuruh** (to tell someone to do something) + **supaya** (to)
- **meminta** (to ask to do something, to request) + **supaya** (to)

**Sopir bis berkata: 'Jangan merokok di dalam bis ini!'**

The bus driver said: 'Don't smoke on this bus!'

**Sopir bis menyuruh penumpang supaya jangan merokok di dalam bis itu.**

The driver told the passengers not to smoke on that bus.

**Guru berkata kepada murid-murid: 'Kumpulkan tugas itu besok.'**

The teacher said to the students: 'Submit the work tomorrow.'

**Guru menyuruh murid-murid supaya mengumpulkan tugas itu besok.**

The teacher told the students to submit the work tomorrow.

If the prefix of the verb in the command has been dropped (see Chapter 28), put it back.

**Rini berkata: 'Bantu saya ya.'**

Rini said: 'Help me, won't you?'

**Rini meminta saya supaya membantu dia.**

Rini asked me to help her.

**Bapak berkata kepada saya: 'Tolong buang sampah ini.'**

Father said to me: 'Please throw this rubbish away.'

**Bapak meminta saya supaya membuang sampah itu.**

Father asked me to throw that rubbish away.



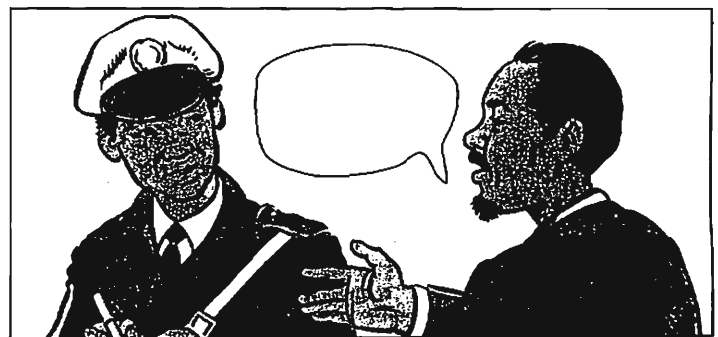
### LATIHAN 3

Look at the following sets of pictures. Picture A has a command in direct speech. Write a sentence for Picture B using indirect speech, reporting what is said in Picture A.

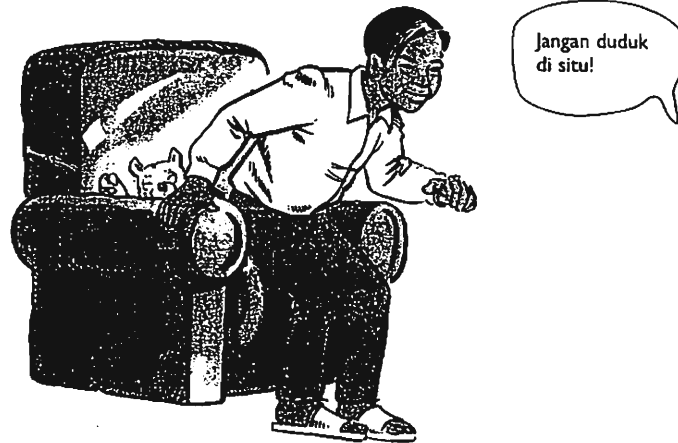
1 Picture A



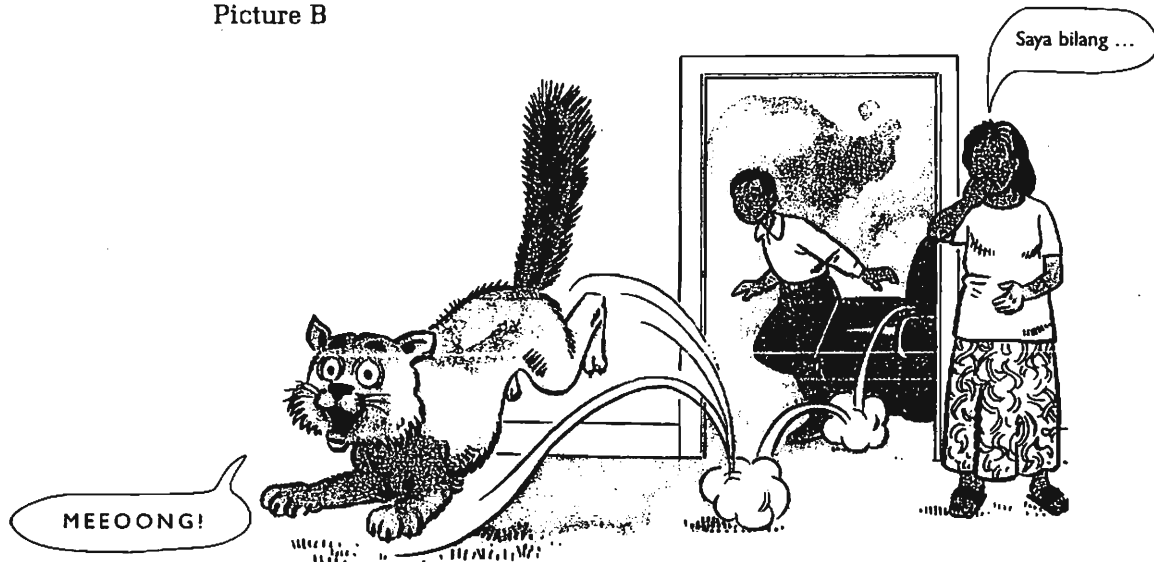
Picture B



2 Picture A



Picture B



## Summary

- 'Say' verbs: **berkata/mengatakan, bertanya, berujar, bilang, menambah**
- Direct reporting:
  - Subject + 'say' verb (with prefix): '...'
  - '...', 'say' verb (no prefix) + subject
  - Exception: **bilang** (no change) → informal
- Indirect reporting:
  - Use **bahwa** ('that') for statements, **apakah** ('if, whether') for 'yes' or 'no' questions.
  - There is no need to add anything for 'wh-' questions.
  - Use **menyuruh/meminta + supaya** for commands.



## Glossary

The following are the grammatical terms used in this book. The definition of each term is already given in the relevant chapters; however, this list may be useful as a quick reference.

**abstract noun** A noun that refers to something we cannot see or touch (e.g. *perasaan* 'emotion, feeling').

**adjective** A word that describes the quality of people (e.g. *cantik* 'beautiful'), things (e.g. *bagus* 'nice, good'), or places (e.g. *jauh* 'far').

**adverb** A word that indicates such things as frequency (e.g. *lima kali* 'five times'), manner (e.g. *pelan-pelan* 'slowly'), or time (e.g. *pagi ini* 'this morning').

**affix** A term used to refer to an incomplete word that is attached to the front or end of a base word.

**agent** A person (or another animate being) who is the instigator of an action.

**aspect** A word that shows whether an action is in process, completed or not yet completed (e.g. *sedang* 'in process of', *sudah* 'already', *belum* 'not yet').

**auxiliary verb** A word that expresses such things as aspect or modality and usually occurs before the main verb.

**benefactive sentence** A sentence construction involving a transitive verb that indicates that the action is done for the benefit of someone else. In Indonesian, the verb is usually suffixed by *-kan*.

**beneficiary** A person (or other animate being) who benefits from the action indicated by the verb.

**causative sentence** A sentence construction involving a transitive verb that indicates that the action 'causes' something to become what is indicated by the base word. In Indonesian, the verb has the suffix *-kan* (e.g. *membersihkan* 'to cause something to become clean, to clean') or *-i* (e.g. *mengotori* 'to cause something to become dirty').

**circumfix** A combination of a prefix and suffix, both attached to the same base word (e.g. *meN-kan in membesarkan*).

**classifier** A word whose function is to classify nouns according to shape or size (e.g. *ekor* 'tail' in *seekor anjing* 'a dog').

**conditional sentence** A sentence construction expressing a hypothesis or condition; an 'if' sentence.

**conjunction** A word that joins or links one part of a sentence to another.

**demonstrative** A pointing word (e.g. *ini* 'this', *itu* 'that').

**direct speech** A sentence used to tell other people what someone has said using the actual words uttered by that person.

**ditransitive sentence** A sentence construction involving a transitive verb that is followed by two objects, the first being the primary object and the second, the secondary object.

**head** The main word in a phrase. In a noun phrase (e.g. *kamar mandi* 'bathroom') the noun (*kamar*) is the head, while in a prepositional phrase (e.g. *di rumah* 'at home') the preposition (*di*) is the head.

**imperative** The sentence construction used to tell someone to do something. Imperative sentences range from commands and requests to invitations and offers.

**indirect speech** A sentence used to report what someone has said using our own words (i.e. not merely quoting).

**interrogative sentence** A sentence that expresses a question.

**intransitive verb** A verb that does not take an object (e.g. *lari* 'run', *tidur* 'sleep').

**modality** A word that expresses such concepts as possibility (e.g. *barangkali* 'maybe'), necessity (e.g. *harus* 'must') or ability (e.g. *bisa* 'can').

**negative imperative** An imperative form used to tell people not to do something (prohibition).

**noun** A word referring to either a person or a thing. When the thing cannot be seen or touched, the noun is called an 'abstract noun'.

**noun phrase** A group of words in which the noun is the main (head) word (e.g. *kamar tidur* 'bedroom').

**object** A noun or noun phrase that occurs directly after a transitive verb in a subject-focus (active) sentence. If the object refers to an entity affected by the action, it is called 'patient'; if it refers to an entity that benefits from the action, it is called 'beneficiary' or 'recipient'.

**object-focus sentence** A sentence construction in which the patient/beneficiary/recipient of the action is mentioned first because it is the focus of our attention.

**patient** An entity (person or thing) that is the object of a transitive verb and is affected by the action of the verb (e.g. *dia* in *saya memukul dia*).

**phrase** A group of words that function like a noun. A phrase in which the main word is a noun is called a noun phrase.

**prefix** An affix that is put before a base word.

**preposition** A word that occurs before a noun, noun phrase or pronoun to indicate a location or time (e.g. *di*, *pada*, *kepada*).

**prepositional phrase** A phrase that typically consists of a preposition followed by a noun or temporal phrase (e.g. *di rumah* 'at home', *pada jam 5* 'at 5 o'clock').

**primary object** The object that directly follows the verb in a ditransitive construction.

**pronoun** A word that can substitute for a noun referring to an entity that is known (e.g. *saya* 'I', *mereka* 'they').

**reciprocal verb** A verb that indicates a mutual action or relationship between two people or objects (e.g. *berpandangan* 'look at each other').

**secondary object** An object that follows the primary object in a ditransitive sentence.

**stative verb** A verb that describes a state rather than an action (e.g. *terbalik* 'upside down, back to front').

**subject** A noun or noun phrase that generally goes before the verb and refers to the 'doer' of an action.

**subject-focus sentence** A sentence in which the subject gets the focus of our attention and is mentioned first before the verb.

**suffix** An affix that is attached to the end of a base word.

**tag** A word that is like a question word and is added at the end of a statement, either to ask a question or to tell someone about something (e.g. *bukan* in *Itu Hasan, bukan?* 'That's Hasan, isn't it?').

**topic-comment sentence** A sentence in which there is a topic (something the sentence is focused on) commented upon in the rest of the sentence.

**transitive verb** A verb that takes an object and this object directly follows it (e.g. *membeli* 'buy'). Some verbs can have both a transitive and intransitive use (e.g. *makan* 'eat').

**verb** A word that refers to an action (e.g. *makan* 'to eat') or state (e.g. *tertutup* 'shut').

abst  
k  
a:  
ada,  
ada:  
adje  
-i  
k  
r  
r  
I  
t  
adv  
adv  
'alt  
-an

an  
ap  
(a)  
ap  
ap  
au  
ay  
ba

ba  
'b  
b



# Index

- abstract nouns  
  ke-an 105  
  and -nya 140-1  
ada, uses of 38-40  
adalah 29-32  
adjectives  
  -an forming an adjective 116  
  ke-an 102-3  
  meN- 73  
  meN-kan 82  
  peN- 112  
  ter- 92  
adverbs 125, 130  
advising 179  
'although' 155-7  
-an  
  forming an adjective 116  
  forming an adverb 117  
  forming a noun 114-15  
  with numbers 116-17  
answers 7-9  
apa: 'what' 3, 191  
(apa)bila 146-7  
apa(kah), using 1-2, 8, 190  
apalagi ... saja 164  
auxiliary verb 125, 130  
ayo 169, 176, 178  
  
bagaimana  
  'how' 4, 191  
  what if 150  
baik ... maupun 162  
'because', ways to say 142-5  
ber- 61-4, 122  
  intransitive verbs 167  
  irregular action of motion 65  
  + numeral 64  
  plural 67  
  reciprocity 65  
  reduplicated 66-7  
ber-an 64-5  
(ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ... 161  
biar 178  
biar(pun) 155  
bilang 188, 189  
bisa 8-9  
boleh 8-9  
boro-boro ... saja 165  
bukan 5-6, 7  
bukan ... melainkan 157  
bukannya 158  
  
classifiers 24  
coba 169  
commands 167-74  
comparing 41-6  
conditionals 146  
conjunctions 151  
  
dari(pada) 41-2, 43  
direct reporting 188-9  
'do not', how to say 179-83  
dong 169, 170-1, 174  
  
'even if' 155-6  
'even though' 155-6  
  
fractions 23-4  
  
gara-gara 143  
harap 171, 172  
hendaklah 171, 172-3  
  
ialah 29-32  
'if', ways to say 146-50  
imperatives 167-84  
  in object-focus 183-5  
indirect reporting 190-4  
inviting 176-8  
iya 6  
  
jangan 179, 180  
janjikan ... pun/saja 164  
jika 146  
jumlah 26  
  
kalah 42  
kalau 146  
kapan: 'when' 4, 151  
ke- 33, 34, 97-8  
  'the + number' 23  
ke-an 97-8  
  abstract nouns 105  
  adjectives 102-3  
  verbs 100-2  
kenapa: 'why' 4  
ketika 151  
kian ... kian 161  
kok ... saja 165  
kurang 43-4  
kurang lebih 26  
  
-lah 171-2  
lantaran 144-5  
lebih dari(pada) 41-2  
less than 41-4  
let alone 164-5  
  
makin 160  
malahan 158  
mari 176, 178  
maupun 162



- meN- 68-73  
 adjectives 73  
 intransitive verbs 71-3,  
 168  
 sound changes 68-9  
 transitive verbs 70-1  
 meN-i verbs 85-91, 120  
 meN-kan 76-82, 120, 122  
 adjectives 82  
 benefactive 78-9  
 causative 77-8  
 mengajak 176  
 mengundang 176  
 mentang-mentang 143-4  
 merupakan 31-2  
 meski(pun) 155  
 more than 41-4  
 most 44-5
- not ... but 157-9  
 noun(s)  
 abstract, ke-an 105  
 abstract and -nya 140-1  
 -an forming a noun  
 114-15  
 peN- 108-11  
 per-an 119-20, 122  
 noun phrases 12-19  
 numbers 20-7  
 -nya  
 as equivalent of 'the'  
 136-7  
 exclamation 137  
 in topic-comment  
 sentences 139-40  
 to be polite 136  
 to form abstract nouns  
 140-1  
 to show possession 136
- object-focus 124, 125-8  
 and transforming subject-  
 focus 128-9  
 imperatives 183-5  
 questions 131  
 with unmentioned subject  
 132  
 offering 178
- paling 44  
 peN- 108-13  
 peN-an 119-20  
 per-an 119, 120  
 prepositional phrase 130  
 prepositions 33-7
- quantity 26
- reporting  
 direct 188-9  
 indirect 190-4  
 requests 174-6
- sambil 152-3  
 same as 45-6  
 'say' verbs in Indonesian  
 188  
 se- 45  
 seandainya 147-8  
 sebaiknya 179  
 sementara 152  
 seumpama(nya) 147  
 stative ter- verbs 93  
 subject-focus 124-5,  
 128-30  
 imperatives 184  
 sudilah 176
- ter- 44  
 abilitative 96  
 accidental action:  
 transitive 95-6
- adjectives 92  
 and ke- or ke-an 97-8  
 reduplicated 98-9  
 stative verbs 93  
 superlative 44  
 tetapi malahan 158  
 tidak 7, 8  
 tidak perlu 179, 182  
 tidak usah 179, 182  
 'to be' 29-32  
 tolong 175, 180  
 topic-comment sentences  
 139-40
- verbs  
 auxiliary 125  
 intransitive 50-3, 57-9,  
 89-90, 167-8  
 ke-an 100-2  
 meN- 77, 80, 119  
 meN-i 85-91, 120  
 meN-kan 77, 80-1, 87,  
 88, 89, 120  
 'say' 188  
 ter- 93-6  
 transitive 50, 54-6, 57-9,  
 168-9  
*see also ber-*
- waktu 151  
 walau(pun) 155  
 'wh-' words, questions with  
 3-4  
 what if 150  
 'when' 151  
 'which (one)?' 48  
 'while' 151, 152-4
- ya 5-6, 8, 169, 170, 174  
 yang, uses of 47-9  
 yuk 176

# Appendix

## How do you say it in Indonesian?

This appendix contains a list of approximately 100 high-frequency English words with their Indonesian translations, covering a range of phrasal verbs and other idioms. It is, of course, not exhaustive. It aims to assist an English-speaking student who wants to know how to say or write a particular word in Indonesian. Experience in teaching has shown that it may be difficult to make a choice among the various renderings to be found in a dictionary, and there is often a tendency to be too literal when translating.

The method is to ask oneself: "What does this word actually mean?" When we reflect on this, several different meanings may present themselves, each with quite different translations into Indonesian. If you get it wrong, the results may be amusing or nonsensical! Of course, we encourage the learner always to double-check in a good dictionary, in order to survey all the possible forms. But in no circumstances should an electronic translation machine be used; as an experiment we looked up the English idiom "on the spur of the moment" – you know what that means ("without a second thought, spontaneously"), and certainly not the literal translation **di atas pacu saat**.

A final hint is to remember the subtle differences that may exist between colloquial and formal expressions, because we need to take these into consideration when choosing the best equivalent in good Indonesian.

Special thanks are due to Katherine Davidsen, Johansjah Sugianto and Linda Hibbs for reading this list and offering valuable suggestions.

### A/AN

In many cases this has no translation, e.g. (where indefiniteness is intended): afflicted by an eye disease **diserang penyakit mata**

She's a clever girl. **Dia gadis pandai.**

But where it means 'one':

Se-: Rp. 25,000 a packet **Rp 25.000 sebungkus**

**Seorang**: a medical student **seorang mahasiswa kedokteran**

**Sebuah**: a large truck **sebuah truk besar**

a kind of **sebangsa/semacam/sejenis**

it's a pity/shame **sayang**

it's a pleasure **senang sekali**

it's an honour **merupakan kehormatan**

it's an insult **kurang ajar!**

### ABLE

See *can, could*: **bisa, dapat.**

Also: **mampu** able to afford: He can buy a car. **Dia mampu membeli mobil.**

**Sempat** to get the chance, succeed in, get to, manage to, still be able to:

They were able to nab the thief at the crossroads.

**Pencuri sempat diciduk di perempatan jalan.**  
able [adj.] 'having ability' **cakap, trampil, berbakat**

### ABOUT

about (= approximately) **kira-kira**: about eleven o'clock **kira-kira jam sebelas**

(= almost) **hampir**: It's about time. **Sudah hampir waktunya.**

about to (= going to, on the point of) **baru akan,**  
(= planning to) **berniat untuk**

(= concerning) **tentang, mengenai, perihal**  
(= around, here and there) verb with **ber---an:**

to wander about **berkeluyuran**

to be spread about **berserakan**

to cruise about **berkeliaran**

to fly about **beterbangan**

to run about **berlari-larian**

(= because of?) **karena**

What about...? **Bagaimana kalau....?**

to set about (a job) **menggarap, mulai mengerjakan**

**AFTER**

after [adv., conj.] **sesudah, setelah**  
 (before verbs) **habis, selesai**  
 after all (= as you might expect) **nota béne**; (having considered) **akhirnya**; anyhow **bagaimana pun (juga), toh, toh ada gunanya**  
 to be after (= look for, pursue) **mencari, mengejar**  
 to take after (= resemble) **mirip**  
 to follow after **menyusul, mengikuti**  
 After you! **Silakan duluan!**

**ALL**

all alone **seorang diri**  
 all together **bersama-sama**  
 All right! (= okay!) **Baiklah!**  
 all over the place (= everywhere) **di mana-mana**  
 all gone **habis semuanya**  
 all the time **terus-menerus, selalu**  
 all at once (= suddenly) **tiba-tiba**  
 all but (= almost) **hampir, nyaris** (to give a negative connotation)  
 all over (= finished) **selesai**  
 in all (= in total) **semuanya**  
 most of all **paling**  
 Is that all? **Ini saja? Itu saja?**  
 at all: Can I help you at all? **Apakah (sekiranya) saya bisa bantu?**  
 not... at all **tidak...sama sekali**  
 all the more... **makin lama makin...**  
 all night **semalam suntuk**  
 all-important **terpenting**  
 all-Indonesia **se-Indonesia**

**ANY**

Sometimes not translated:

Are there any letters? **Apakah ada surat?**  
 I haven't got any. **Saya tidak punya / Tidak ada.**  
 In combinations:  
 anywhere (= in any place) **di mana saja**  
 anywhere (= to any place) **ke mana saja**  
 anything **apa saja**  
 anyone **siapa saja**  
 any one (out of several) **mana saja**  
 any time **kapan saja**  
 any time now (= very soon) **tidak lama lagi / dalam waktu singkat**

any more (= no longer) **lagi**: He doesn't work here any more. **Dia sudah tidak bekerja di sini lagi.**

Are you any better? **Apakah sudah merasa lebih baik?**

**AS**

as (= in the capacity of) **sebagai**: as a linguist... **sebagai ahli bahasa...**  
 (= like) **seperti**: as usual **seperti biasa**  
 (as... as, in comparisons) **se-**: as high as a mountain **setinggi gunung**  
 as far as (= until, up to) **sampai**: as far as the main road **sampai jalan besar**  
 as far as (= to the extent that) **se-**: as far as I know **setahu saya**  
 as for (= concerning) **kalau**  
 as good as (= almost) **praktis / boléh dikatakan**  
 as long as (= while) **selama**  
 as long as (while there's still time) **mumpung**  
 as one (= all together) **serentak / sekaligus**  
 as soon as **begitu**  
 as (= when) **ketika**  
 as (= because) **karena**  
 as though **seolah-olah / seakan-akan**  
 as to (= regarding) **tentang / mengenai**

**ASK**

to ask a question **tanya, bertanya**: May I ask your name? **Boléh tanya nama anda?**  
 to ask about **bertanya tentang / menanyakan**  
 to ask oneself **bertanya pada diri sendiri** (cf. to wonder **bertanya-tanya dalam hatinya**)  
 to ask out (= invite) **mengajak berkenan**  
 to ask for **minta** (= request) **mohon**  
 a big ask (= challenge) **tantangan besar**  
 for the asking **tinggal minta saja**  
 I ask you! (exclamation of amazement, = how is it possible!) **Bagaimana mungkin!**  
 to be asking for trouble **mengundang masalah (terlalu berani)**

**BAD**

bad (in general; evil, wicked) **buruk**: bad weather **cuaca buruk**  
 (= ugly) **jelék**  
 (= impolite) **tak pantas**  
 (= rotten) **busuk**  
 (= unwell) **kurang énak / kurang séhat**  
 (= naughty) **nakal**

(= criminal) **jahat**  
 bad luck **nasib malang**  
 not bad (= pretty good) **lumayan / boléh juga**  
 to be bad for (= disadvantage) **merugikan**  
 to be bad at **kurang pandai**  
 bad-tempered **cepat marah**

**BEFORE**

(time) **sebelum**  
 (in the past, formerly) **dulu**  
 before long (in the future, soon) **tidak lama lagi, sebentar lagi**  
 (in advance of) **lebih dulu / duluan**  
 (place, = in front of) **di depan / di muka**  
 in the presence of **di hadapan**  
 to have before one (= face) **menghadapi, berhadapan dengan**

**BIG**

big (= large) **besar**  
 on a big scale **besar-besaran**  
 to think big **berpikir secara besar-besaran / mengejar ambisi**  
 (= grown up) **déwasa**  
 to talk big (= brag) **membual**  
 big (= elder) sister / big (= elder) brother **kakak**  
 big-hearted (magnanimous) **besar jiwa / pemurah**  
 too big **kebesaran**  
 a big shot **pembesar**  
 big-time criminal **penjahat kelas kakap**  
 big toe **jempol kaki, ibu jari kaki**

**BOTH**

both (of them) **kedua-duanya / dua-duanya / keduanya**  
 both (the group of two) **kedua**: both children **kedua anak itu**  
 both... and... **baik... maupun....**

**BY**

by (introducing the agent of a passive verb) **oléh**.  
 For example: **Email Joel diterima oléh Sari**.  
 Joel's email was received by Sari.  
 by (= at) **di**: by the side of the road **di pinggir jalan**  
 by (= via, by way of, through) **léwat**  
 by (= with) **dengan**: What do you mean by that expression? **Apa yang dimaksudkan dengan ucapan itu?**

by the hour **jam-jaman**  
 by the day **harian**  
 by the kilo **kiloan**  
 by law **menurut hukum**  
 by agreement **menurut persetujuan**  
 by oneself (= alone) **sendirian**  
 by the way, ... **omong-omong, ngomong-ngomong, ...**  
 by far **jauh**  
 by and large (= generally) **pada umumnya**  
 by degrees (= gradually) **sedikit demi sedikit**  
 by day **siang hari**; by night **malam hari**  
 by all means (= certainly) **pasti**  
 by no means (= definitely not) **sama sekali tidak**

**CAN / COULD**

can, able to, capable of; to know how to, manage to **bisa**

can, able to, capable of; -able, -ible **dapat**

Note: These two 'modal words' are very close in meaning, and sometimes interchangeable, but not always. **Bisa** includes being mentally able, while **dapat** (perhaps influenced by its second meaning, 'to get, obtain') includes being physically capable of doing something.

can, may, allowed to **boléh** (Note: This is quite different from Malaysian Malay)

**EXAMPLES:**

His grandchild can walk (already). **Cucunya sudah bisa jalan.**

Were you able (did you manage) to sleep? **Bisa tidur?**

Of course you can (it's quite possible). **Bisa saja.**

It can be said that (we may say that)... **Boléh dikatakan (bahwa)...**

It can't be predicted. **Tidak dapat diramalkan.**  
 What can you do? **Apa boléh buat!** (idiom)

May I ask a question? **Boléh tanya, ya.**

Can do! **Bisa!**

**CALL**

to call (= summon) **manggil**  
 to call (= telephone) **menélépon**  
 to call (= name) **menyebut**: What do you call this?  
**Ini disebut apa?**  
 to be called (= named) **bernama**  
 to call back **menélépon kembali**  
 to call for (= require) **memerlukan**; (= suggest, propose, call on) **menyerukan**

to call forth (= cause) **menimbulkan / menyebabkan**  
 to call off (= cancel) **membatalkan**  
 to call in (= drop in) **mampir / singgah**  
 to call on (= visit) **mengunjungi / berkunjung ke**  
 to call out (= shout) **berteriak**  
 to call together (= gather) **mengumpulkan**  
 to call up (troops) **mengerahkan**  
 call-button **kenop panggilan**  
 call-girl **wanita panggilan**

### CARE

to care about (= pay attention to) **mempedulikan**  
 to not care (= be indifferent to) **tidak peduli**  
 to care for (= take care of, keep) **memelihara**  
 to care for (= arrange, manage, run) **mengurus**  
 to care for (= keep an eye on, be responsible for) **menjaga**  
 to care for (= attend to, look after, tend) **mengasuh**  
 to care for (= nurse, treat) **merawat**  
 to care for (= like) **suka**: I don't care for dogs.  
**Saya tidak suka anjing.**  
 to take care (= be careful, attentive) **berhati-hati**  
 to not care (= not mind, have no objection) **tidak berkeberatan**  
 cares (= worries) **kesusahan**  
 with care (= accurately) **dengan teliti**

### CARRY

to carry (in general) **membawa**  
 (a heavy burden, with others) **menggotong**  
 (a load, on the shoulder) **memikul**  
 (on the back or hip) **menggéndong**  
 (in the hand, hanging down) **menjinjing**  
 to carry (= transport) **mengangkut**  
 to carry off (= abduct, steal) **membawa lari**  
 to carry off (= seize, claim) **merebut**  
 to carry on (= continue) **meneruskan / melanjutkan**  
 to carry out (= implement) **melaksanakan**  
 to carry through (= complete) **menyelesaikan**  
 to get carried away (= forget oneself) **lupa diri**

### CLEAR

clear (= distinct, explicit) **jelas**  
 (= evident, obvious) **terang**  
 (of weather) **cerah**  
 (of road) **kosong**  
 (of liquid, sky) **jernih**

(= transparent, limpid) **bening**  
 to clear (clean up, rubbish) **membersihkan**  
 (debts) **melunasi**  
 (goods, in a sale) **mengobral**  
 (= to approve) **mengesahkan**  
 (the table) **mengangkat makanan**  
 to clear off (= run away) **membolos**  
 to clear up (weather, = stop raining) **menjadi terang**

### COME

to come (= arrive) **datang**  
 to come about (= happen) **terjadi**  
 to come across (= find, meet) **menemukan**  
 to come along (= join in) **ikut**  
 to come back (= return) **kembali**  
 to come between (= separate) **memisahkan**  
 to come down (= descend) **turun ke bawah**;  
 (= become less) **berkurang**  
 to come forward (= advance) **tampil ke muka**  
 to come from (= originate from) **berasal dari**  
 to come in (= enter) **masuk**  
 to come off (= come loose) **terlepas**; (= succeed) **berhasil / jadi**  
 to come out (= emerge) **keluar**; (of publications) **terbit**; (of flowers) **mekar**  
 to come to (= add up to) **berjumlah**; (= to become conscious) **sadar lagi**  
 to come within (= be included in) **tercakup**  
 Come on! (inviting, urging) **Ayo!**  
 Come on now! (protesting) **Jangan begitu! Sudahlah!**

### DO

NOTE: Many different idioms as well as grammatical functions in English.  
 to be doing (= engaging in an activity): What are you doing? **Kamu sedang apa?/ Kamu sedang berbuat apa?**  
 to do (= work at) **bekerja**: What do you do? **Anda bekerja sebagai apa?**  
 to do about it (= tackle, deal with) **menggarap**, **menindak**: We should do something about it. **Harus kita garap, harus kita tindak.**  
 That will do (= be enough) **Sudah cukup**  
 do (emphatic function): You do understand, don't you? **Kamu memang mengerti, kan?**  
 It did turn up in the end. **Akhirnya muncul juga.**

In questions and negatives, no separate translation!

Do you understand? **Apakah mengerti?**

No, I don't. **Tidak (mengerti).**

to do away with (= remove) **menghilangkan**

to do up (= repair) **merenovasi**; done up (= decorated) **berhias**

could do with (= needs) **perlu / membutuhkan**: It could do with some paint. **Perlu dicat.**

to do without **berjalan tanpa, mengalami kekurangan**

done (food) **masak**

done in (= exhausted) **kecapaian**

to have to do with **berkaitan / berhubungan / bertalian dengan**

### END

to end (= to come to an end) **berakhir**

to end (= bring to an end) **mengakhiri**

to end it all (= commit suicide) **membunuh diri**

end [noun] (= extremity) **ujung**: at the end of the street **di ujung jalan**

in the end (= finally) **akhirnya**

the end of the line **titik penghabisan**

the bitter end **saat terakhir**

at the end of one's **tether putus asa**

at the end of the day (= after considering everything) **setelah mempertimbangkan semuanya**

to make ends meet **belanja dengan uang seadanya**

for days on end **berhari-hari terus-menerus**

at a loose end, **tidak bertujuan / tidak tahu ke mana**

the ends of the earth **ujung dunia / ke mana saja**

That's the end of it! **Habis perkara!**

### FEW

few (= not many) **sedikit**

very few **sedikit sekali**

no fewer than **paling sedikit / tidak kurang dari**

a few (= several) **beberapa**

quite a few **cukup banyak**

few and far between **jarang sekali**

### FEEL

to feel **merasa**: I feel quite well. **Saya merasa cukup sehat.**

I feel it's time to go home. **Saya rasa sudah waktunya untuk pulang.**

it feels... **rasanya**: It feels nice. **Rasanya énak.**

It feels as if it's going to rain. **Rasanya seperti akan hujan.**

to feel (= of an object) **berasa**: The kettle feels hot.

**Téko berasa panas.**

to feel (= have a bodily sensation) **terasa**: Her feet feel cold. **Kakinya terasa dingin.**

to feel like (= want to) **ingin**

to feel (= touch, grope) **meraba**

to feel for (= sympathize with) **merasa kasihan pada**

to feel hurt (= offended) **tersinggung**

I feel (= think) that **saya kira...**

to feel at home **betah, kerasan**

### FOR

Time:

for a moment **sementara**

for several months **selama / untuk beberapa bulan**

for eight years **selama delapan tahun**

for years **bertahun-tahun**

for a long time **lama**

for good **untuk selama-lamanya**

for the time being **untuk sementara**

for (= to, used for) **untuk**: money to buy food **uang untuk membeli makanan**

for (= for the sake of) **demi**: for your health's sake **demi keséhatanmu**

for (= on behalf of) **bagi**

for (= toward, of feelings) **terhadap**: feelings of respect for **rasa hormat terhadap**

as for (= regarding) **kalau / bagi**

word for word **kata demi kata**

for sale **akan dijual**

for fun **iseng**

for a joke **tidak sungguh-sungguh, bercanda**

for nothing (= without paying) **gratis / tanpa dibayar**; (= in vain) **dengan sia-sia**

thanks for **terima kasih atas**

to pay for **membayar**

to pay for schooling **membayar uang sekolah**

to hope for **mengharapkan**

to exchange for **menukar dengan**

### FUN

to have fun (= to enjoy oneself, have a good time) **bersenang-senang / bermain-main**

just for fun (not serious) **main-main saja**

to be fun (= enjoyable) **menyenangkan**; (= exciting) **asyik**

to make fun of (= mock) **mengolok-olokkan / mengéjék**

**GET**

to get (= obtain) **mendapat**

to get (= become) **menjadi**: To get dark **Menjadi gelap**

Movement in various directions:

to get in/on (modes of transport) **naik**

to get off/out (transport) **turun**

to get there (= arrive) **tiba / sampai**: We got there at 4. **Kita tiba (di sana) jam empat.**

to get back **kembali**

to get home **pulang / tiba di rumah**

to get away (= leave) **berangkat**; (= escape) **lolos**

to get across **menyeberang**

to get behind (= be late) **terlambat**

to get beyond **meléwati**

to be getting on (in years) **lanjut usia**

to get on **bagaimana**: How are you getting on?  
**Bagaimana kabarnya?**

How did you get on? **Bagaimana hasilnya?**

to get over (= recover from) **sembuh dari**; (= surmount) **mengatasi**

to get together **berkumpul**

to get up (= from sleep) **bangun**, (from a sitting position) **bangkit**

**GIVE**

to give (= grant, provide, add) **memberi**

to give (= contribute) **menyumbang**

to give (= pay) **membayar**

to give (= hold, a talk, party etc.) **mengadakan**

to give and take **saling mengalah**

to give away (= donate) **menghadiahkan / mendermakan, mengamalkan**

to give back (= return) **mengembalikan**

to give birth **melahirkan / bersalin**

to give in (= admit defeat) **menyerah / mengalah**

to give off (= emit) **mengeluarkan**

to give out (= distribute) **membagi-bagikan**

to give up (= stop, e.g. smoking) **berhenti**;  
(= abandon) **meninggalkan**

give or take a few (= approximately) **kurang-lebih**

given to (= have a tendency to) **cenderung**

given (= a certain) **tertentu**

I give up! (= to have learned one's lesson) **Kapok aku!**

**GO**

to go (general) **pergi**

to go (= leave) **berangkat**

to go (= be lost) **hilang**

to go (= travel, move) **berjalan**

to go (= be allowed) **boléh**

to go (= become) **menjadi**: S. is going mad. S. **menjadi gila.**

to go across **menyeberang**

to go after **mengikuti / menyusul**

to go along **ikut serta**

to go around [trans.] **mengelilingi / berédar, berkeliling** [intrans.]

to go away **pergi; berangkat; hilang**

to go back **kembali**

to go before **mendahului**

to go by **léwat**

to go down **turun**; (= become less) **berkurang**

to go in **masuk**

to go into **memasuki**

to go on with (= continue) **meneruskan**

to go out **keluar**; (= be extinguished) **padam**

to go through (= experience) **mengalami**

to go together/with (= fit) **cocok**

to go up **naik**; (= increase) **meningkat**

**GOOD**

good (general: quality, condition, character) **baik**

to taste, feel good **énak**

to have a good time **bersenang-senang**

How good to see you! **Senang sekali bertemu dengan kamu!**

to be good at **pandai**

to be good for **berguna untuk**

as good as (= almost) as good as new **dapat dikatakan baru?**

good-hearted **baik hati**

good-looking **cantik** (girls), **ganteng, cakap** (boys)

Good luck! **Selamat! Sukses!**

Good morning **Selamat pagi!**

a good deal (= quite a lot) **cukup banyak**

Good heavens! (in surprise) **Aduh! Ya Allah!** (Isl.)

**HAPPEN**

to happen (= to occur) **terjadi**: What's happened?

**Apa yang terjadi?**

(by coincidence) **kebetulan**: It happened to be a Friday. **Kebetulan hari Jumat.**

(possibly, might) **kiranya, barangkali**: Do you happen to know her name? **Apakah (kiranya) kamu tahu namanya?**

to happen on (= to find) **menemukan, kedapatan**  
to have happen to one (= to experience something)  
**ditimpa, kena**: What happened to you? **Kamu kena apa? Kamu kenapa? (kena + apa);**  
(= to get lost) What's happened to my watch?  
**Jamku hilang ke mana?**  
as it happens..., **sebenarnya...kebetulan**

**HARD**

hard (not soft) **keras**: a hard mattress **kasur keras**  
to work hard **bekerja keras**  
hard liquor **minuman keras**  
(difficult, troublesome) **sukar**: It's hard to find work. **Sukar mencari pekerjaan.**  
(difficult, tough, complex) **rumit**  
(complicated, intricate) **sulit**  
(hard to find, get; burdensome, troublesome) **susah**  
(hard to bear, serious, severe) **berat**  
hard up **kekurangan uang / miskin**  
hard and fast **mutlak**  
hard cash **uang kontan**  
hard-headed **keras kepala**  
hard-hearted **keras hati**  
hard luck **nasib malang**  
hard of hearing **susah mendengar**

**HAVE**

to have (= to be there) **ada**: Do you have a cat? We do! **Apakah ada kucing? Ada!**  
**Ber-**: Do you have a family? (= are you married?) **Apakah sudah berkeluarga?**  
to have (= own) **punya**: They have two cars. **Meréka punya dua buah mobil.**  
the owner **yang punya**  
to have (= possess) **mempunyai**: the ones who have the right... **yang mempunyai hak...**  
to have (= cause, order) **menyuruh**: Just have it pulled out! **Suruhlah dicabut saja!**  
NOTE: 'has/have...-ed' forms a past tense in English; use **sudah** in Indonesian: Have you eaten? **Sudah makan?**  
Many idioms with 'have', e.g.  
to have breakfast **makan sarapan**  
to have a baby **melahirkan anak**  
to have a cold **pilek**  
to have a fright **terkejut**

to have a good time **bersenang-senang**  
to have an inspiration **mendapat ilham**

**HERE**

here (= this place) **sini**; (= in this place) **di sini**;  
(= to this place) **ke sini**  
Here you are! (giving something) **Silakan!**  
Here's the room. **Ini kamarnya.**  
Here it is! **Inilah dia!**  
my friend here **teman saya ini**  
here and there **sana-sini**  
Here goes! **Mari! Coba saja!**  
up to here in work **sampai tenggelam dalam kesibukan**

**HOW**

how? **Bagaimana?**: How does it work? **Bagaimana kerjanya?**  
How are things going? **Bagaimana kabarnya?**  
how (= the way, method) **caranya**: This is how you do it. **Begini caranya.**  
how much? **Berapa?**: How much does it cost? **Berapa harganya?**  
how many? **Berapa?**: How many are there? **Ada berapa?**  
how often? (= how many times?) **Berapa kali?**  
How many times a week? **Berapa kali seminggu?**  
How far? **Berapa jauhnya?**: How far is it from here? **Berapa jauhnya dari sini?**  
How! (**betapa** adj. + **-nya**): How big he's grown! **Betapa besarnya!**  
**Alangkah** (adj. + **-nya**): How beautiful it is! **Alangkah indahnya!**  
how much **betapa**: She doesn't know how much I love her. **Dia belum tahu betapa saya mencintainya.**  
how is it that..., How come...? (= why?) **kenapa / mengapa?**  
How about...? **Bagaimana kalau...**: How about we eat out tonight? **Bagaimana kalau kita makan di luar malam ini?**  
How are you going? (= how are you?) **Apa kabar?**  
How will we go? (= by what mode of transport?) **Kita naik apa?**

**IF**

if (= on condition that) **kalau, jika**: If I get the opportunity... **Kalau ada kesempatan ...**



(= whether) **apakah**: It's not clear if the conference will go ahead or not. **Belum jelas apakah konferensinya akan berlangsung atau tidak.**  
 If only! (= just imagine) **bayangkan!** (I wish it was) **mudah-mudahan**  
 if for instance (= supposing) (kalau) seandainya, seumpamanya  
 even if **kalau sekalipun**  
 a bit iffy **kurang meyakinkan**  
 See also *that*.

**IN**

in (location) **di**: in town **di kota**; in the country **di pedesaan**  
 (time) in time (= punctual) **pada waktunya**; (= gradually) **lama-kelamaan**  
 in a week's time (future) **seminggu lagi**  
 in two hours (time taken) **dalam waktu dua jam**  
 in the dry season **pada musim kering / kemarau**  
 in my opinion **menurut pendapat / hémat saya**  
 in case of fire **kalau ada pembakaran**  
 in these circumstances **dalam keadaan ini**  
 in the context/framework of **dalam rangka**  
 in the name of **atas nama**  
 in writing **secara tertulis**  
 to be in (= present, at home) **ada**; (= to have arrived) **sudah sampai/masuk**  
 ins and outs **seluk-beluks**

**IT**

Often no direct translation needed in Indonesian.

## EXAMPLES:

It's hot. **Panas.**  
 It's raining. **Hujan.**  
 It's a pity. **Sayang.**  
 It hurts. **Sakit.**  
 It's a long way. **Jauh.**  
 It doesn't matter. **Tidak apa-apa.**  
 It's important. **Penting.**  
 How much is it? **Berapa harganya?**  
 Do you like it? **Apakah suka?**  
 I don't believe it! **Saya tidak percaya / masak!**  
 Drink it up! **Minumlah!**  
 Don't worry out it. **Jangan kuatir.**  
 What can you do about it? **Apa boléh buat?**

**JUST**

just (= only) **saja**: just a little/a bit sedikit **saja**;  
 Just joking! **Main-main saja!**

just **baru**: The program's just begun. **Acaranya baru mulai.**

just now (= a moment ago) **tadi / baru-baru ini**;  
 (= only recently) **baru saja**

just (= exactly) **tepat**: Just in time. **Tepat pada waktunya.**

(= really) **benar-benar**: It's just great here! **Benar-benar senang di sini!**

(with imperative) **saja**: Just look! **Lihat saja!**

just [adj.] (= fair) **adil**

just as / like **seperti**

just in case, lest (= as a precaution) **untuk jaga-jaga / supaya jangan**

**KNOW**

to know (= be acquainted with) **kenal dengan** (a person); (= be familiar with) **kenal akan** (matters)

to get to know **mengenal**

to know (= identify, recognize) **mengenal**

known (= well known, recognized) **terkenal**

to know by sight **kenal tanpa tahu nama orang**

to know (= understand, be well informed) **tahu**;

(= to find out about) **mengetahui**

to know no bounds (= unlimited) **tanpa batas**

to know the ropes (= be experienced) **berpengalaman**

to not want to know (= don't care) **tak peduli**

You-know (= can't mention the word) **anu**

Goodness knows! (= I have no idea) **Kurang tahu saya!**

**LEARN**

to learn ([intrans.], = to do study about) **belajar**:

to learn Javanese **belajar bahasa Jawa**; ([trans.]

= to study) **mempelajari**: to learn how to peel

a mango **mempelajari caranya mengupas mangga**

(= hear, find out about) **mendapat kabar bahwa / mendengar / mengetahui**

(= learn by heart, memorize) **menghafalkan**

learned **terpelajar / berilmu**

learning (noun) (= science) **pengetahuan / ilmu**

**pengetahuan**; (= being learned) **keterpelajaran**

**LEAVE**

to leave (= to depart, set out, go away) **berangkat, pergi, keluar dari**

- (= to leave behind, abandon) **meninggalkan**  
left behind (accidentally) **tertinggal**  
the only thing left to do is... **tinggal...**
- (= to allow) **membiarkan**: Don't leave the door open. **Janganlah membiarkan pintunya terbuka.**
- (= to postpone) **menunda**: Leave it till next year.  
**Tundalah sampai tahun depan.**
- (= to bequeath) **mewariskan**
- (= to hand over, surrender) **menyerahkan**: I leave it to you! **Terserah kepada kamu!**
- (= to leave over, remaining) **menyisakan**; left over **tersisa**  
to take leave (= say goodbye) **minta diri, berpamitan**
- (= to have a holiday) **mengambil cuti**  
sick leave **cuti sakit**  
by your leave (= permission) **dengan izin anda**  
to leave off (= cease) **berhenti**  
to leave out (= remove, omit) **menghapus**; (= neglect, fail to include) **mengabaikan, tidak memasukkan**
- It leaves a lot to be desired! (= is very unsatisfactory) **sangat tidak memuaskan**

**LET**

- to let (= allow) **membiarkan**: Let it be! (forget it) **Biarlah!**
- let's... **Mari...**: Let us / me... **Biar kita / saya...**;  
(= come on!) **Ayo!**
- to let be (= not interfere) **jangan diganggu**  
to let down (= disappoint) **mengecewakan**  
to let fly (= explode, in anger) **meledak**  
to let go (= release) **melepaskan**  
to let off (= forgive) **memaafkan**; (fireworks) **menyalakan**
- to let up (= subside, wind, rain) **reda**  
let alone **apalagi / jangankan**

**LIE**

- to lie (= be in a lying position) **berbaring / terbaring**
- (= to be located) **terletak**  
(= to be found) **terdapat**  
(= to be present) **berada**  
(= to be buried) **terkubur**  
(= to tell a lie) **berbohong**  
to lie in (= sleep late) **tidur sampai siang**

**LIKE**

- to like **suka**: I like eating chocolate. **Saya suka makan coklat.**; I like you! **Saya suka kamu!**
- (= be attached to, fond of, have a preference for) **menyukai**: whatever you like **sesuka hatimu**  
like (= resembling) **seperti**: To swim like a fish. **Berenang seperti ikan.**
- (= such as) **seperti**: a paper like **Kedaulatan Rakyat Surat kabar seperti K.R.**
- like ([adj.] = of the same) **se-**: like-minded **sependapat**  
and the like **dan lain-lain, dan sebagainya**  
like this **begini**  
like that **begitu**

**LIVE**

- to live (= be alive) **hidup**: still living/ alive **masih hidup**
- (= have a way of life) **hidup**: to live according to one's religion **hidup sesuai dengan agama**  
(= to reside) **tinggal / bertempat tinggal**: Sari lives in Pasar Minggu. **Sari tinggal di Pasar Minggu.**
- live [adj.] **hidup**: live fish **ikan hidup**; live music **musik hidup**
- to live together **hidup bersama, tinggal bersama**  
to live apart **hidup terpisah**  
to live on **hidup dari / dengan**  
to live through (= experience) **mengalami**  
to live up to **hidup sesuai dengan**  
to live from hand to mouth **hidup Senin-Kemis**

**LOOK**

- to look (at) (= see) **melihat**  
(= have the appearance of) **kelihatan**  
(look at and notice; consider) **memandang**  
to look about / around **melihat-lihat**  
to look toward, in the direction of **menoléh** (back: **ke belakang**; to the right: **ke kanan** etc.)
- to look for **mencari**  
to look into (= examine) **memeriksa, mengusut**  
to look on (= consider as) **menganggap**  
to look up to (= respect) **menghormati, menconthoh**
- Look, it's like this... **Begini, ya...**  
Look out! **Awas!**  
looks (noun) (= appearance) **rupa**: (= face) **wajah**  
good looks (= smart appearance) **ketampanan**;  
(male) **kegantengan**; (female) **kecantikan**

very much **sekali**: He likes her very much. **Dia suka sekali padanya**.

much as... **walaupun**: Much as we tried, it still wasn't finished. **Walaupun kita berusaha keras, namun belum selesai juga**.

### MUST, HAS TO, SHOULD, OUGHT TO

(general) **harus**: Tap water has to (should) be boiled before it can be drunk. **Air keran harus direbus sebelum diminum**.

You ought to **haruslah!**

(= should have, but didn't) **seharusnya**

(= without fail, for sure, certainly; stronger than **harus**) **mesti**: If the traffic's as blocked as this, we're sure to miss the plane. **Kalau lalu lintas macet begini, kita mesti ketinggalan pesawat**.

(= should be) **semestinya** as it should be **seperti semestinya**

(= obligatory, required, compulsory) **wajib**: You must wear a safety belt. **Wajib mengenakan sabuk pengaman**.

(= must have, very likely) **pasti**: He must have caught it from another child. **Penyakit itu pasti ketularan dari anak lain**.

See also *need*.

### NEED

to need (something) **membutuhkan**

(= require) **memerlukan**

to need to (= have to, ought to, do something)

**perlu**: I need to get to the shops. **Saya perlu ke toko**.

(= should) **harus**: Do I need to wait? **Apakah saya harus menunggu?**

No need (= it's not necessary) **tidak usah**: There's no need to pay. **Tidak usah membayar**.

**need** [noun] **kebutuhan / keperluan**: He has few needs. **Kebutuhannya tidak banyak**.

the need for, (= necessity) **perlunya**: It is not yet clear whether it is necessary to get medicine.

**Perlunya mencari obat belum jelas**.

### NO

No (answer to question) **tidak** (coll. **nggak**)

(= not any) **tidak** (plus verb and noun): I have no money **Saya tidak punya uang**. There's no time. **Tidak ada waktu**.

No longer (= no more, not any more) (**sudah tidak... lagi**): It's no longer raining / not raining any more. **Tidak hujan lagi**.

No (= not a) **bukan**: This is no goat! **Ini bukan kambing!**

No way! (= impossible) **Tak mungkin!**

No (= forbidden) **dilarang**: No entry. **Dilarang masuk**.

no good (= bad) **kurang baik**

(= a pity) **sayang**: That's no good! **Sayanglah!**

no go (= will not go ahead) **tidak jadi**

no one (= nobody) **tidak seorang pun**

No worries! **Oké! Bérés!**

### OFF

to be off (a race) **mulai**

(= don't like any more) **tidak suka lagi**

(= going bad, rotten) **busuk**

(= cancelled) **dibatalkan**

(= taken off, clothes) **dibuka, dilepas, ditanggalkan**

(= turned off, switch) **mati, dimatikan**

(= loose, e.g. button) **lepas**

a day off **hari libur, tidak masuk**

on and off **sebentar-sebentar**

well off **makmur, mampu**; badly off **misikin**

off-colour (= not feeling well) **kurang énak badan**; (= blue) **cabul sedikit**

off-duty **bébas tugas**

off-season **musim sepi**

off-the-cuff (= spontaneously) **secara spontan**

off-the-record **secara tidak resmi**

### ON

on (location) **di**

on top of **di atas**

on the right **di sebelah kanan**

on the plane **di dalam pesawat**

on (time) **pada**

on Sunday **pada hari Minggu**

on (a date) **pada tanggal...**

on time **pada waktunya**

On that occasion **pada kesempatan itu**

Other idioms:

on the condition that **dengan syarat**

on condition (= provided) **asal**

on the initiative of **atas prakarsa**

on the authority of **atas kuasa**

on behalf of **untuk, atas nama**

on (= after) **sesudah / setelah**: On arriving in Semarang,...

**Sesudah tiba di Semarang...**

on and off (= from time to time) **sewaktu-waktu**

to be out (= not at home) **sedang pergi / tidak ada di rumah**

out of (= none left) **kehabisan / tidak ada**

out of (= made of, from) **dari**

out of (= because of) **karena**

out to it (= unconscious) **tidak sadar / pingsan**

out of town **di luar kota**

out of order (= not working) **rusak**

out of the way (= isolated) **terpencil**

Out of the (my) way! (= move aside) **Minggir!**

### OVER

over (= above) **di atas**

over (= more than) **lebih / ke atas / lewat**

over here **di sebelah sini**

over there **di sana / di sebelah sana**

over (during the period of) **selama**

over the road **di seberang jalan**

to cross over **menyeberang**

to be over (= finished, ended) **selesai / berakhir**

to be over it (= better, recovered) **sembuh / pulih**

to be over the moon (= very happy) **luar biasa senang**

to do it over (= repeat) **mengulangi**

to think it over (= consider) **menimbang / memikirkan**

to move over (= shift) **bergesér**

to stay over (= spend the night) **menginap**

over the hill (= old) **lanjut usia**

overseas **di luar negeri**

### PLEASE

to please (= make happy, content) **menyenangkan;**  
(= satisfy) **memuaskan**

pleased **senang / puas**

pleasing **menyenangkan;** (= interesting) **menarik;** (= pleasant, to hear, see) **énak didengar / dilihat**

hard to please (= fussy, choosy) **réwél**

As you please! (= please yourself) **Sesuka hajatimu!**

Please! (inviting someone to do something) **silakan!**

(do something for me) **tolong...**

(formal) **harap**

(would you please, be so kind as to) **sudilah;**

(would you please) **minta**

(kindly, formal) **mohon**

### POLITE

polite (= civil, courteous, correct) **sopan**

(= refined) **halus**

(= ethical, decorous, correct) **sopan-santun**

(= proper, fitting, in good taste) **pantas**

(= with good manners, cultured) **beradab**

### POSSIBLE

possible, possibly **mungkin**

impossible, out of the question **tidak mungkin**

very possible **mungkin sekali**

quite possibly **kemungkinan besar**

How is it possible? **Mana mungkin! Masa!**

as soon as possible **secepat, selekas mungkin**

to the fullest extent possible **sedapat-dapatnya, sebisa-bisanya**

### PUT

to put (= place, lay) **menaruh**

(= assign a place, locate, deploy) **menempatkan**

(= lay, place, put down) **meletakkan**

(a question) **mengajukan pertanyaan**

(= express, put in words) **mengungkapkan**

(= estimate, guess at) **menaksir**

to put aside **menyisihkan**

to put away (= save up, store) **menyimpan**

to put down (= despise, hold in contempt) **menghina-nakan**

to put forward (= suggest, offer, propose) **mengemukakan**

to put on (clothes) **mengenakan pakaian, berba-ju;** (weight) **bertambah gemuk**

to put out (fire) **memadamkan api / kebakaran**

to put together (= collect) **mengumpulkan;** (= compile) **menyusun**

to put up with (= be able to bear, endure) **tahan**

### RATHER

rather (= quite, somewhat) **agak:** This book is rather boring. **Buku ini agak membosankan.**

(= quite, a lot) **cukup:** He's rather arrogant. **Cukup sombong orangnya.**

(= to prefer; would sooner) **lebih suka:** I'd rather just stay home. **Saya lebih suka tinggal di rumah saja.**

(= rather than, instead of) **daripada**

### REMEMBER

to remember ([intrans.], = to be mindful) **ingat**

(= to be mindful of) **ingat akan**

([trans.], = to recall, recollect, keep in mind) **mengingat**

(= to have suddenly come to mind) **teringat**

(= to commemorate) **memperingati**

(= to convey greetings) **menyampaikan salam:**

Remember me to your little sister. **Sampaikan salam kepada adikmu.**

(= to not forget) **jangan lupa:** Remember to lock the door. **Jangan lupa mengunci pintu.**

## SO

so (= very) **sekali / sangat:** I'm so tired. **Saya capek sekali.**

so (= like that) **begitu:** Of course it's so. **Mé mang begitu.**

so (= as a result, consequently) **jadi...**

so (= also) **juga:** So am I. **Saya juga.**

so (= true) **benar:** It's not so. **Tidak benar.**

and so, ... **maka, ...**

so that (purpose) **supaya**

so... that (degree) **begitu... sehingga**

the so-called **yang dinamakan**

so-and-so **si anu**

so-so **lumayan**

So what? **lantas? terus?**

it so happened that... **kebetulan...**

so far (= till now) **sampai sekarang / selama ini**

So long! (= see you later) **Sampai jumpa!**

## SOME

(Note: sometimes no separate translation.)

some (= a little, a certain quantity) **sedikit:** Do you want some sambal with that? **Mau pakai sambal sedikit?; I've already got some. Sudah ada.**

some (= several, a few) **beberapa:** some kilos of rice **beberapa kilo beras**

some..., others... **ada yang... ada yang...:** Some are old, others are young **Ada yang tua, ada yang muda**

some (indefinite) some... or other: some person or other **orang entah siapa**

some day (in future) **kapan-kapan**

at some length **agak lama**

at some distance **agak jauh**

someone, somebody **seseorang, ada orang**

somehow **bagaimana pun juga**

(= approximately) **kurang lebih:** some ten kilometres **kurang lebih sepuluh kilo.**

somewhere **di salah satu tempat / entah di mana:**

She left her keys somewhere. **Kuncinya ketinggalan, entah di mana.**

## STAND

to stand ([intrans.], = stand erect) **berdiri**

(= be there) **berada**

(= able to bear) **bertahan**

(= continue to be valid) **berlaku**

as things stand, ... **dalam keadaan begini, ...**

to stand aside **meminggir / mengundurkan diri**

to stand back **mundur**

to stand by (= be ready) **bersiap / siap-siaga**

to stand for (= mean) **berarti**

(= to allow) **membiarkan / membolehkan**

to stand in for (= replace) **mengganti**

to stand on (= insist) **menuntut**

to stand out (= excel) **menonjol**

to stand over (= threaten) **mengancam**

to stand up (= rise) **berdiri**

## SAY

to say (= tell) **bilang:** Who says I'm stingy? **Siapa bilang saya pelit / kikir?**

to say (= speak) **berkata**

to say (= state, tell) **mengatakan** (with object, or **bahwa**, that...)

he said **katanya:** What did he say? **Apa katanya?**

it is said, they say **kata orang / kabarnya / konon** the said (= aforementioned) **tersebut**

a say (= voice) **suara:** a say in the decision **suara dalam keputusan itu**

it goes without saying (= it is quite clear) **sudah cukup jelas**

to say the word **memberi ijin / perintah**

there's no saying **tak mungkin diramalkan**

when all's said and done **pada akhir perhitungan** a saying (= proverb) **pepatah / peribahasa**

## SEEM

it seems (= the appearance of it is...) **rupanya**

it seems (= the feeling of it is...) **rasanya**

it seems (= apparently) **kelihatannya / nampaknya / rupa-rupanya**

it seems to me (= in my opinion) **pada hémat saya, pada pendapat saya...**

it seems to be (= to have the look of, but not in fact) **kelihatannya**

it seems to be (= it is as if) **seolah-olah**

**SET**

- to set (= place, put) **menaruh**  
 (= a clock, trap etc.) **memasang**  
 (= fix, determine) **menentukan**  
 (the table) **mengatur**  
 ([intrans.], the sun) **terbenam**  
 to set apart **mengasingkan / menjauhkan**  
 to set aside (= save, money) **menyimpan / menabung**; (= put on the side) **mengesampingkan**  
 to set back (turn back, clock) **mengundurkan**  
 to set down (in writing) **menuliskan**; (= put down, place) **meletakkan**; (= disembark passengers) **menurunkan**  
 to set off (= leave) **berangkat**  
 to set up (= arrange, establish) **mengadakan / mendirikan**  
 to set out (= leave) **berangkat**; (= display) **mamerkan**  
 set (adj.) (= fixed) **tetap**  
 set (= ready) **siap**

**SURE**

- sure 1. (= certain, positive, determined, proven);  
 2. (= for sure, surely, no doubt, certainly, of course) **pasti**  
 Also for a person: I'm sure. **Saya pasti**.  
 But: I'm not too sure. **Kurang tahu saya**.  
 There's sure to be another chance. **Pasti ada kesempatan lain**.  
 For sure! Sure! **Tentu! Tentu saja!**  
 surely (= certainly) **tentunya** (cf. not necessarily **belum tentu**)  
 to be sure of (= confident, certain, positive, convinced) **yakin**: sure of her love **Yakin akan cintanya**  
 sure enough (= it turns out that) **ternyata / nyatanya**

**TAKE**

- to take (= get, fetch) **mengambil**; (= escort) **mengantar**  
 to take away **mengambil**; (= subtract) **mengurangi**; (= remove) **menghilangkan**  
 to take off (aircraft) **tinggal landas**; (clothes) **membuka**  
 to take up (= collect) **mengumpulkan**; (an offer) **menerima**; (space) **mengambil**; (topic) **membicarakan**  
 to take in (= trick) **menipu**

- to take after (= resemble) **menyerupai / mirip dengan**  
 to take along **membawa (serta)**  
 to take back (= withdraw) **menarik kembali**  
 to take down (= note) **mencatat**  
 to take for (= guess) **mengira**  
 to take out **mengeluarkan**; (money from account) **mengambil**; (= extract, tooth) **mencabut**  
 to take up with **bergaul dengan**  
 to take it (= bear it) **tahan**

**TALK**

- to talk **bicara** (more formal: **berbicara**)  
 (= to have a chat) **bercakap**  
 (= chat, converse) **ngomong**  
 to talk about (= discuss) **membicarakan**  
 to talk back (= dispute) **membantah**  
 to talk into (= persuade) **membujuk**  
 talk [noun] (= lecture) **ceramah**; (= rumours) **desas-desus, kabar burung**  
 talks (= discussions) **pembicaraan / négosiasi**  
 idle talk, nonsense **omong kosong**  
 to give a talking-to, talk like a Dutch uncle **mencaci-maki / memarahi**  
 to talk big **menyombongkan diri**

**TELL**

- to tell (= say) **bilang**: Don't tell anyone! **Jangan bilang, ya!**  
 to tell (= inform) **memberitahukan**  
 to tell ([trans.], = narrate) **menceritakan**; ([intrans.], = tell a story) **bercerita**  
 to tell (= order) **menyuruh**  
 to tell (= state) **mengatakan**  
 to tell (= know) **tahu**: How can I tell? **Bagaimana saya bisa tahu?**  
 to tell (= distinguish) **mengenal**  
 to tell (the difference) **membédakan**  
 to tell on (= make a complaint about) **mengadukan**  
 to tell off (= reprimand) **menegur**  
 to tell tales (= gossip) **bergunjing**  
 to tell the time **melihat jam**  
 You're telling me! **Tak usah bilang!**  
 all told (= taking account of everything) **kalau dihitung semuanya**  
 See also *say*.

**THAT**

that, those [demonstrative] **itu**: That becak's wrecked. **Becak itu rusak.**

that, those ([pron.]: one, thing) **itu**: That's not very important. **Itu tidak begitu penting.**

that ([conj.], after verbs of saying etc.) **bahwa**: The lecturer said that his marks were excellent. **Bu dosen mengatakan bahwa angkanya bagus.**

that (after adjectives): zero, or **karena**

It's a pity that we can't meet again. **Sayang kita tidak bisa ketemu sekali lagi.**

amazed that **heran karena**

disappointed that **kecewa karena**

happy that **senang karena**

sad that **sedih karena**

that perhaps, lest, in case **kalau-kalau**: She was afraid (that) there might be a cockroach in the bathroom. **Dia takut kalau-kalau ada coro dalam kamar mandinya.**

so that **supaya / agar**

like that, that way **begitu**

That's it! (the end of the matter) **Habis perkara!**

**THE**

In most positions, no translation, e.g.

the State **negara**

the middle class **golongan tengah**

on the edge of the river **di tebing sungai**

But in other places, when specific, not general: **itu**

There's a bird's nest in the mango tree. **Ada sarang burung di dalam pohon mangga itu.**

at the time **pada waktu itu**

the rich (= rich people) **orang kaya**

the ... one(s) **yang**: the first (one) **yang pertama**;

the last (one) **yang terakhir**

the... the... **makin... makin**: the more the merrier **makin banyak makin ramai**

the (a language) **bahasa**: borrowed from the Sanskrit **dipinjam dari bahasa Sanskreta**

**THERE**

there is / are (= exist) **ada**

to be there (= present) **hadir**

to be there (= at home) **ada di rumah**

there (= that place) **situ**; (= in that place) **di situ**

there (= that place over there, more distant) **sana**;

(= in that place) **di sana**; (= to that place) **ke sana**

to be there (= arrive) **sampai / tiba (di tujuan)**:

Are we there yet? **Sudah sampai belum?**

There you are! (= that's it) **Itu dia!**

there comes a time to... **tibalah waktunya untuk**

**THING**

thing (= object) **benda**

thing (= matter, case) **hal**: And another thing,...

**Dan hal lain lagi...**

thing (= problem, question, matter) **soal**: There's another thing that needs to be thought about...

**Ada soal lagi yang perlu dipikirkan**

things (= luggage) **barang-barang**

things (= clothes) **pakaian**

things (= tools) **alat-alat**

things (= the situation) **keadaan**: Things are looking up! **Keadaannya membaik!**; How are things?

**Bagaimana kabarnya?**

The thing is, ... **Soalnya,...**

the ... thing (adjective + -nya): The main thing is, ... **Pokoknya, ...**

the funny thing is, ... **Anéhnya, ...**

it's not the thing to do (= not polite) **tidak pantas**

Just the thing! **Ini dia! Tepat yang diinginkan!**

**THINK**

to think (= reflect, muse) **berpikir**

to think things over **berpikir-pikir**

to think about (someone or something) **memikirkan**

to think (= have occur to one) **terpikir**

to think of (= hold an opinion about) **berpendapat tentang**

without thinking **tanpa dipikir**

to think aloud **berpikir dengan suara keras**

to think back to **mengenang**

to think better of (= regret) **menyesal**; (= repent) **tobat**

to think big **mempunyai cita-cita tinggi**

to think nothing of **memberanikan diri / menganggap mudah**

to think out **memecah masalah**

to think over **mempertimbangkan**

to think through **memikirkan masak-masak**

to think up **mencari akal**

**TIME**

time (= o'clock) **jam** (formal: **pukul**): What time is it? **Jam berapa?**

time (general) **waktu**: I have no time! **Tidak ada waktu!**

at that time **pada waktu itu**

right on time **tepat pada waktunya**  
 from time to time **sewaktu-waktu / kadang-kadang**  
 at the same time **pada waktu yang sama / sekaligus**  
 time (= occasion) **kali**: every time **setiap kali**  
 time after time (= repeatedly) **berkali-kali**  
 time (= period, era) **jaman** (formal: **zaman**): in the time of the VOC **Pada jaman VOC**  
 any time  **kapan saja**  
 all the time (= always) **selalu**  
 at no time (= never) **tak pernah**  
 for the time being  **untuk sementara**  
 to take one's time (= not rush) **dengan santai / tidak terburu-buru**  
 to take time out (= have a break, rest) **beristirahat**  
 time off (= a holiday) **libur**  
 in quick time **cepat-cepat**: All in good time! (= be patient) **Sabarlah dulu!**

**THROW**

to throw **melémparkan** (e.g. ball, stone); **menyorotkan** (light)  
 to throw away (rubbish) **membuang**  
 to throw down **menjatuhkan**  
 to throw on (clothes) **memakai (baju) dengan tergesa-gesa**  
 to throw over (= abandon) **meninggalkan**  
 to throw out (= evict) **mengusir; (= reject) menolak**  
 to throw up (= vomit) **muntah**  
 to throw a party **mengadakan pesta**  
 to throw a fit **bertingkah / menunjukkan émosi**

**TO**

to (direction toward, a place) **ke**  
 (to a person) **kepada**  
 (talking to) **dengan**  
 to (for, used for) **untuk**: money to buy food **uang untuk membeli makan**  
 to (up to, until, as far as) **sampai**  
 to (regarding, toward) **terhadap**: attitude toward corruption **sikap terhadap korupsi**  
 to (= before the hour) **kurang**: a quarter to one **jam satu kurang seperempat**  
 in order to **supaya**  
 NOTE: the 'to' of the English infinitive (e.g. 'to give') has no Indonesian translation.

**TOO**

too (= excessive) **terlalu**: Your composition's too long. **Karanganmu terlalu panjang.**  
 That's too much! (= going too far) **Terlalu!**  
 too (= also) **juga**: Their cat's fat too. **Kucing mereka juga gemuk.**  
**pun** He feels sad too. **Dia pun merasa sedih.**  
 too much (= in excess) **lebih**: This account's 100,000 too much. **Rékening ini 100.000 lebih**  
 Too bad! **Sayang sekali!**  
 all too soon **terlalu cepat**

**TOUCH**

to touch (= brush lightly against, come into contact with) **menyentuh**  
 to be touching, to touch each other **bersentuhan**  
 to touch (= feel, handle) **menjamah**  
 to touch (= grope, caress, fondle) **meraba**  
 to touch (up)on (a subject) **menyinggung**  
 to touch, be touching (the heart) **mengharukan**  
 to get in touch with (= contact) **menghubungi**  
 to keep in touch **tetap berhubungan**  
 to touch down (= land, aircraft) **mendarat**

**TRUE**

true (= right, correct, according to fact) **benar**  
 true (= genuine) **sejati**  
 true (= exact) **cocok**  
 true (= loyal) **setia**  
 true (= actual) **sebenarnya**  
 true (= real, not a lie) **betul**  
 to come true (= be granted, wish) **terkabul**  
 to be true to one's word **mematuhi janji**  
 It's true! (= not kidding) **Betul!**  
 true to life (= according to the facts) **sesuai dengan kenyataan**  
 true to form = according to character) **sesuai dengan wataknya**

**TURN**

to turn ([intrans.], in a certain direction) **bélok** (more formal: **berbélok**): to turn to the north **bélok ke utara**  
 to turn ([intrans.], = go round, e.g. wheel) **berputar**  
 to turn (= become) **menjadi**: It turned sour. **Menjadi pahit.**  
 to turn ([trans.], = turn over) **membalik**: to turn the page **membalik halaman**  
 to turn (records, tapes) **memutar**



to turn (the face) **memalingkan**  
 to turn (= point something in a direction) **mengarahkan**  
 to turn back (= return) **kembali / berbalik**  
 to turn down (= refuse) **menolak**  
 to turn into (= become) **berubah menjadi**  
 to turn off (tap) **menutup**; (electricity) **mematikan**  
 to turn on **memasang / menghidupkan**  
 to turn out (= end) **berakhir**  
 to turn over **membalikkan**; (in bed) **berguling**  
 to turn up (= increase sound) **membesarkan**;  
 (= appear) **muncul**  
 a turn **giliran**; to take turns **bergiliran**  
 to turn the stomach **memuakan**

### UNDERSTAND

to understand **mengerti**  
 (= to comprehend the meaning of) **memahami**  
 (= to be understood, intended) **dimaksudkan**  
 (= to hear, be informed) **menangkap**  
 (= to interpret as) **mengartikan / menafsirkan**

### UP

up (= in an upward direction) **ke atas**  
 to go up **naik**  
 up the hill **naik bukit**  
 up to the top **sampai ke atas**  
 up in the sky (**tinggi**) **di langit**  
 up the street (= at the end of the street) **di ujung jalan**; (= along the street) **sepanjang jalan**  
 to add up **menghitung**  
 it doesn't add up (= not correct) **tidak cocok**  
 to give up **menyerah**  
 it's up to you **terserah**  
 Time's up! **Waktunya habis!**  
 What are you up to (= doing) these days? **Sedang apa sekarang?**  
 to walk up and down (= back and forth) **mondar-mandir**  
 to get up (from sleeping or lying down) **bangun**;  
 (from sitting) **berdiri**  
 up the pole (= crazy) **sinting**

### VERY

very **sangat** (placed before word modified): very satisfactory **sangat memuaskan**  
 very **sekali** (placed after word modified): very sweet **manis sekali**  
 very (superlative) **ter-**: the very best **yang terbaik**

very (emphatic) **juga**: that very day **hari itu juga**  
 very (exact) **tepat**: his very words **katanya persis**  
 not very **tidak begitu**

Very well! **Baiklah!**

to do one's very best **berusaha sebaik-baiknya**

the very first **pertama-tama**

at the very most **paling banyak / sebanyak-banyaknya**

at the very least **paling sedikit / sekurang-kurangnya**

### WANT

to want to mau (also: willing; going to): What do you want (to do)? **Mau apa?**

ingin (= wish, desire, would like to): I want to see that film. **Saya ingin menonton film itu.**

to want (= require, need) **membutuhkan**: Wanted, a nightwatchman **Dibutuhkan, seorang jaga malam**

to want (= ask) **minta**: How much do you want for that bike? **Minta berapa untuk sepeda itu?**

to want (= desire, wish for, long for) **menginginkan**: The lecturer wants her students to make good progress with their language study. **Bu dosen menginginkan supaya mahasiswanya maju dalam studi bahasa mereka.**

to want (= wish for, desire, have in view) **menghendaki**, undesirable **tidak dihendaki**  
 wants [noun] **kebutuhan**

for want of (= lacking) **karena kekurangan**  
 wanting (= missing, lacking, not enough) **kurang**

### WAY

way (general) **jalan**; (= street, road) **jalan, Jl.**;  
 (= method) **cara**

in a ... way **secara**: in a regular / orderly way **secara teratur**

all the way (= completely) **sepenuhnya / sampai selesai**

by way of (= via) **léwat / melalui**

to get one's way **mendapat apa yang diinginkan**

to get in the way (= obstruct) **menghalangi / merintang** jalan

to give way (= surrender) **mengalah / menyerah**;  
 (= collapse) **ambruk**

to go one's own way **menurut kemauan sendiri**  
 to go out of one's way **merépotkan diri / bersusah-payah**

in a way (= somewhat) **sedikit banyak**

in no way (= not at all) **tidak...sama sekali**

to know one's way around **tahu jalan / mengerti seluk-beluk**

to lead the way **memimpin / merintis jalan**

to look the other way (= pretend not to know) **pu-ra-pura tidak tahu**

to lose one's way **tersesat**

to make one's way (= advance) **berhasil maju / naik pangkat**

to make way for **melapangkan / membuka jalan untuk**

out of the way (= isolated) **terpencil**

to see one's way (clear) to **mendapat kesempatan** to stand in the way of **menghalangi / menentang**

under way **dalam perjalanan** (journey, voyage); **sedang dikerjakan** (project, work)

ways (= customs) **adat-istiadat / kebiasaan**

ways and means **akal dan siasat**

a long way off **jauh** (distance); **masih lama** (time) way ahead **jauh di muka**

way off (= very inaccurate) **salah benar / berselisih banyak**

way out in the country **jauh di pedesaan / di udik / di pedalaman**

by the way, ... **ngomong-ngomong, ...**

Have it your own way! **Terserah! Biarin! Sekarepmu!**

on the way (= going to happen) **akan terjadi**; (= going to be born) **akan lahir**

to have a way (= special talent) with **berbakat untuk**

on the way out (fashion) **mulai tidak mode lagi**  
the other way round (the reverse) **sebaliknya**

## WHEN

Question words: when? **kapan?**

(= at what time of day?) **jam berapa?**

(= in what period?) **jaman apa?**: When was that? **Jaman apa itu?**

(= if) **kalau**: Ring me when you get home. **Bél kalau sudah tiba di rumah.**

(= at the time, in the past) **waktu / ketika**: When I was young... **Waktu saya masih muda**

(= at the moment when) **saat**: When I was about to board, I was called to Information. **Saat saya mau naik ke pesawat, saya dipanggil ke bagian Informasi.**

(= the time when) **waktunya**: That was the time when the Arts Faculty was still in the Wijilan (the residence of Prince Wijil). **Itu waktunya Fakultas Sastra masih di Wijilan.**

## WHERE

Question word: where (= in which place?) **di mana?**

(= to which place?) **ke mana?**

Relative: where **tempat, di mana**: She visited the house where she was born. **Dia berkunjung ke rumah tempat dia lahir.**

## WHICH

Question word: which (= which one, out of several?) **yang mana?**: Which one do you want? **Mau ambil yang mana?**

Relative: which (= that) **yang**: I want a book which has photos. **Saya mau buku yang ada foto.**

## WHILE

Conjunction: (used to join two sentences which have the same subject) **sambil**: ...he said while laughing ... **katanya sambil tertawa**

(= during the time that) **sementara / selagi**: While the teacher wrote, the pupils made notes. **Sementara pak guru menulis, murid-murid membuat catatan.**

(= whereas, joining two sentences with different subjects, expressing a contrast) **sedangkan**: Indonesian rice tastes nice, while Australian rice doesn't. **Nasi di Indonesia énak, sedangkan nasi Australia kurang énak.**

while [noun] (= a period of time)

for a while **beberapa waktu**

a little while **sebentar**

in a while **sebentar lagi**

once in a while **sekali-sekali / kadang-kadang**

a while ago **beberapa waktu lalu**

to be worthwhile (= useful, beneficial) **bermanfaat / berfaédah / bernilai**

while [verb] to while away the time **menghabiskan waktu / bermalas-malas**

## WILL, WOULD

will [future tense] **akan** We'll meet tonight. **Kita akan bertemu nanti malam.**

It's going to rain. **Akan hujan.**

Not likely! (= not going to happen) **Tidak akan!**

Also 'will have' **akan**: We will have paid it off in another six months. **Akan kita lunasi enam bulan lagi.**

NOTE: 'would' is past tense of 'will', and also a conditional, indicating the consequence of an imagined event: also **akan**. We would have paid

too much, if you hadn't told us this. **Kita akan membayar terlalu banyak, kalau anda tidak memberitahu.**

**Mau** (= want to): The engine won't start. **Mesinnya tak mau hidup.**

'Would' in polite requests:

Would you please... **tolong / minta / mohon / silakan**: Would you please be seated. **Silakan duduk.**

In plain requests:

...would you ..., **ya**: Wash these clothes, would you? **Pakaian ini dicuci, ya?**

Will do! **Baiklah! / Oké!**

### WITH

with (= together with) **dengan**

(= by means of) **dengan**

**Ber-**: with white hair **berambut putih**.

with pleasure **dengan senang hati**

with white hair **berambut putih**

with respect/regard to **mengenai**

with the exception of **terkecuali**

to have nothing to do with **tidak berurusan dengan**

to do (something) with (something) **Diapakan?**

What do you do with it?

with all one's strength **sekuat-kuatnya**

coffee with milk **kopi susu**

### WORK

to work (at a job) **bekerja**

to work (= go) **jalan**: My watch isn't working.

**Jamku tidak jalan.**

to work (= make move) **menggerakkan**

to work (= be effective) **mujarab**: The medicine works. **Obat itu mujarab.**

to work on/at **mengerjakan**

to work off (debt) **melunasi dengan bekerja**

to work on (= influence) **mempengaruhi**

to work out (a puzzle) **memecahkan**

(= determine) **menentukan**

(= exercise) **berolahraga**

to work it out (= understand) **mengerti**

out of work (= be unemployed) **menganggur**

a work (artistic, scholarly) **karya**

the works (machine, engine) **mesin**

to be worked up **bergairah**